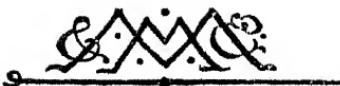




**MACMILLAN'S LATIN COURSE**  
**FIRST PART**



MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED  
LONDON • BOMBAY • CALCUTTA • MADRAS  
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY  
NEW YORK • BOSTON • CHICAGO  
DALLAS • SAN FRANCISCO

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, Ltd.  
TORONTO

MACMILLAN'S  
L A T I N   C O U R S E

FIRST PART

BY

A. M. COOK, M.A.,

SCHOOLMASTER OF ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED  
ST. MARTIN'S STREET, LONDON

1922

**COPYRIGHT**

*Printed by R. & R. CLARK, LIMITED, Edinburgh, 1885*

*Revised and Enlarged 1887*

*Reprinted 1891, 1892, 1894, 1896, 1899, 1901, 1904, 1907, 1911, 1916  
1917, 1918, 1919, 1920, 1922*

**PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN**

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

IN this Second Edition exercises have been added on the Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice, an English-Latin Dictionary has been provided (in addition to the Vocabularies), and the Latin-English Dictionary has been enlarged so as to include all words used in the exercises.

Should any teachers be so fortunate as to find the exercises more abundant than they require, the remedy is simple; they can omit at will. They will at least agree with the author that in this point excess is better than defect.

*March 1887.*



## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THE preparation of this book was undertaken from a conviction that the books of the kind now in use err in three not unimportant points—1. The exercises in each chapter are not sufficient in amount. 2. Too many words are introduced at once. 3. More rules are given than are required, and more explanation than is helpful.

In the present book, therefore, the *Exercises* are far more abundant than is usual. The *Vocabularies* are kept as small as possible, and consist of rarely more than six words, and often of less; and, with the help of the recapitulatory exercises, a word once introduced is kept before the pupil through the rest of the book. No more *Rules* are given than are considered indispensable. It is hoped that this method will render the first steps in Latin easier and more sure.

In the treatment of the subjects the order of the Latin grammars is followed. The present First Part includes the active voice of the four conjugations omitting, however, the subjunctive mood.

It is suggested that the English exercises should be first read aloud by the pupil, that they should be read and re-read, and not written out until he is able to translate them into Latin with some fluency.



## CONTENTS.

SECT. EXERCISES		PAGE
1.	FIRST DECLENSION : Singular . . . . .	1
2. [ 1, 2.]	(The Accusative Case) . . . . .	1
3. [ 3, 4.]	First Declension : Singular ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	3
4. [ 5-10.]	First Declension : Plural . . . . .	4
5. [11-11.]	SECOND DECLENSION : Nouns in -us . . . . .	7
6. [15, 16.]	Neuter Nouns in -um . . . . .	9
7. [17-20.]	Adjectives in -us, -a, -um : Singular . . . . .	11
8. [21-24.]	Adjectives in -us, -a, -um : Plural . . . . .	13
9. [25-30.]	Nouns and Adjectives in -er . . . . .	15
10. [31-34.]	EST, SUNT . . . . .	19
11. [35-38.]	First and Second Declensions : Exceptions to Gender . . . . .	21
	TRANSLATION I. A Letter of a Father to his Boy at School . . . . .	24
	II. Romulus and Remus . . . . .	24
	III. The Black Slave . . . . .	24
12. [39-42.]	THIRD DECLENSION : The Case-Endings . . . . .	25
13. [43-46.]	The Gender shown by Meaning . . . . .	27
14. [47-50.]	The Stem . . . . .	31
15. [51-54.]	Genitive Plural . . . . .	34
16. [55-58.]	Genitive Plural ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	37
	TRANSLATION IV. A Fable . . . . .	40
17. [59-62.]	The Case-Endings of Neuter Nouns . . . . .	40
18. [63, 64.]	The Case-Endings of Neuter Nouns ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	43
19. [65-70.]	RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES . . . . .	44
	TRANSLATION V. Coriolanus . . . . .	48

SECT. EXERCISES		PAGE
<b>20. [ 71, 72.]</b>	THIRD DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ) : GENDER OF NOUNS BY TERMINATION ; Masculine Rule, -o . . . . .	49
<b>21. [ 73, 74.]</b>	Masculine nouns, -or . . . . .	50
<b>22. [ 75, 76.]</b>	Masculine nouns, -os . . . . .	52
<b>23. [ 77, 78.]</b>	Masculine nouns, -er . . . . .	53
<b>24. [ 79, 80.]</b>	Masculine nouns, -es . . . . .	54
<b>25. [ 81-84.]</b>	RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES—on the Mas- culine Rule . . . . .	56
	TRANSLATION VI. Ixion, Sisyphus, and Tan- talus . . . . .	58
<b>26. [ 85, 86.]</b>	Exceptions to the Masculine Rule, -o . . . . .	59
<b>27. [ 87, 88.]</b>	Exceptions to the Masculine Rule, -or, -os . . . . .	60
<b>28. [ 89, 90.]</b>	Exceptions to the Masculine Rule, -er . . . . .	62
<b>29. [ 91, 92.]</b>	Exceptions to the Masculine Rule, -es . . . . .	63
<b>30. [ 93-96.]</b>	RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES—on the Mas- culine Rule and Exceptions . . . . .	64
	TRANSLATION VII. Theseus and Ariadne . . . . .	66
<b>31. [ 97, 98.]</b>	Feminine Rule, -is . . . . .	67
<b>32. [ 99, 100.]</b>	Feminine nouns, -is ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	69
<b>33. [101, 102.]</b>	Feminine nouns, -us, -uis . . . . .	70
<b>34. [103, 104.]</b>	Feminine nouns, -e . . . . .	72
<b>35. [105, 106.]</b>	Feminine nouns -s . . . . .	73
<b>36. [107, 108.]</b>	Feminine nouns, -es . . . . .	75
<b>37. [109-112.]</b>	RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES—on the Femi- nine Rule . . . . .	76
	TRANSLATION VIII. A Surprise . . . . .	79
<b>38. [113, 114.]</b>	Exceptions to the Feminine Rule, -is . . . . .	79
<b>39. [115, 116.]</b>	Exceptions to Feminine Rule, -is ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	81
<b>40. [117, 118.]</b>	Exceptions to Feminine Rule, -is ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	82
<b>41. [119, 120.]</b>	Exceptions to Feminine Rule, -is ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	83
<b>42. [121, 122.]</b>	Exceptions to Feminine Rule, -is ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	84
<b>43. [123, 124.]</b>	RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES—on the Gender of Nouns in -is . . . . .	86

## CONTENTS.

xi

SECT. EXERCISES		PAGE
44. [125, 126.]	THIRD DECLENSION ( <i>continued</i> ) : Exceptions to Feminine Rule, - <i>a</i> . . . . .	87
45. [127, 128.]	Exceptions to Feminine Rule, - <i>s</i> . . . . .	88
46. [129-132.]	RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES—on the Feminine Rule and Exceptions . . . . .	90
	TRANSLATION IX. The Roman Army fights a Serpent . . . . .	93
47. [133, 134.]	Neuter Rule ; - <i>ur</i> , - <i>ur</i> , - <i>us</i> . . . . .	94
48. [135, 136.]	Neuter Nouns, - <i>us</i> ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	95
49. [137, 138.]	Neuter Nouns, - <i>l</i> , - <i>a</i> , - <i>u</i> , - <i>e</i> , - <i>o</i> , - <i>t</i> . . . . .	97
50. [139, 140.]	Exceptions to Neuter Rule . . . . .	98
51. [141, 142.]	Exceptions to Neuter Rule ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	100
52. [143, 144.]	Exceptions to Neuter Rule ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	101
53. [145-148.]	RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES—on the Neuter Rule and Exceptions . . . . .	102
	TRANSLATION X. A Battle . . . . .	105
54. [149, 150.]	Gender Rules applied to new words . . . . .	105
55. [151, 152.]	Gender Rules applied to new words ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	107
56. [153, 154.]	Gender Rules applied to new words ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	108
57. [155, 156.]	Adjectives of the Third Declension . . . . .	109
58. [157, 158.]	Adjectives of the Third Declension ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	112
59. [159, 160.]	Adjectives of the Third Declension, in - <i>er</i> . . . . .	114
	TRANSLATION XI. A Roman Account of Britain . . . . .	117
60. [161, 162.]	FOURTH DECLENSION . . . . .	117
61. [163, 164.]	Fourth Declension : Nouns in - <i>u</i> . . . . .	120
62. [165, 166.]	Fourth Declension : Domus . . . . .	122
63. [167, 168.]	FIFTH DECLENSION . . . . .	124
64. [169, 170.]	Fifth Declension ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	125
65. [171-180.]	RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES—on the Declensions . . . . .	127
	TRANSLATION XII. A Ghost . . . . .	134
66. [181-184.]	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES : The Comparative . . . . .	135
67. [185-188.]	The Superlative . . . . .	138

SECT. EXERCISES		PAGE
68. [189-192.]	The Superlative ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	140
69. [193, 194.]	Irregular Comparison . . . . .	143
70. [195, 196.]	Irregular Comparison ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	144
	TRANSLATION XIII. Arminius defeats the Romans . . . . .	145
71. [197, 198.]	NUMBERS : The Cardinal Numbers . . . . .	146
72. [199, 200.]	The Cardinal Numbers ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	148
73. [201, 202.]	The Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	151
74. [203, 204.]	The Ordinal Numbers ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	153
75. [205-208.]	RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES . . . . .	155
	TRANSLATION XIV. Dates in Early English History . . . . .	157
76. [209, 210.]	THE VERB ESSE . . . . .	158
77. [211, 212.]	Esse ; Future and Imperfect . . . . .	160
78. [213-216.]	Esse ; Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect . . . . .	163
79. [217-220.]	PRONOUNS : Ego, tu, se . . . . .	166
80. [221-224.]	Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ) : Hie, ille . . . . .	170
	TRANSLATION XV., XVI. Bannockburn . . . . .	175
81. [225-228.]	Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ) : Is, idem . . . . .	176
82. [229, 230.]	Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ) : Ipse, iste . . . . .	180
83. [231-234.]	Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ) : Unus, alius . . . . .	183
84. [235-238.]	Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ) : Uter, alter . . . . .	186
	TRANSLATION XVII. Ulysses in Polyphemus' Cave.—I. . . . .	190
85. [239-242.]	Pronouns ( <i>continued</i> ) : Qui . . . . .	190
86. [243, 244.]	VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION : Indicative Mood, Present Tense . . . . .	194
87. [245, 246.]	Future Tense . . . . .	196
88. [247, 248.]	Imperfect Tense . . . . .	198
89. [249, 250.]	Perfect Tense . . . . .	201
90. [251, 252.]	Future Perfect and Pluperfect . . . . .	203
91. [253, 254.]	Parts of the Imperative and Infinitive Moods . . . . .	206
	TRANSLATION XVIII. Ulysses in Polyphemus' Cave.—II. . . . .	208

SECT.	EXERCISES	PAGE
92.	[255-258.] SECOND CONJUGATION : Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses . . . . .	209
93.	[259-262.] Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses . . . . .	214
94.	[263, 264.] Parts of the Imperative and Infinitive Moods . . . . .	218
	TRANSLATION XIX. Ulysses in Polyphemus' Cave.—III. . . . .	220
95.	[265-268.] THIRD CONJUGATION : Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses . . . . .	221
96.	[269-272.] Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses . . . . .	225
97.	[273, 274.] Parts of the Imperative and Infinitive Moods . . . . .	229
	TRANSLATION XX. Ulysses in Polyphemus' Cave.—IV. . . . .	231
98.	[275, 276.] FOURTH CONJUGATION : Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses . . . . .	232
99.	[277, 278.] Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses . . . . .	234
100.	[279-282.] Parts of the Imperative and Infinitive Moods . . . . .	237
	TRANSLATION XXI. Ulysses in Polyphemus' Cave.—V. . . . .	239
101.	[283-286.] PASSIVE VOICE: FIRST CONJUGATION : Indicative Mood : Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses . . . . .	240
102.	[287-290.] Indicative Mood ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	243
	TRANSLATION XXII. Nausica and Ennius . . . . .	245
	XXIII. Literal Obedience . . . . .	246
103.	[291, 292.] SECOND CONJUGATION : Indicative Mood ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	246
104.	[293, 294.] Indicative Mood ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	248
	TRANSLATION XXIV. A Cork Tag . . . . .	249
	XXV. The Fable of the Members of the Body . . . . .	250
105.	[295-298.] THIRD CONJUGATION : Indicative Mood ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	250
106.	[299, 300.] Indicative Mood ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	253
	TRANSLATION XXVI. David and Goliath . . . . .	254
	XXVII. Do. Do. ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	255

SECT. EXERCISES		PAGE
<b>107. [301, 302.] FOURTH CONJUGATION: Indicative Mood (continued) . . . . .</b>		<b>256</b>
<b>108. [303-306.] Indicative Mood (continued) . . . . .</b>		<b>258</b>
<b>TRANSLATION XXVIII. Bacchus and the Pirates</b>		<b>260</b>
<b>XXIX. Gaius Mucius Scaevola</b>		<b>261</b>
<b>RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES: 307-324 . . . . .</b>		<b>262</b>
<b>CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS . . . . .</b>		<b>275</b>
<b>VOCABULARIES TO THE EXERCISES . . . . .</b>		<b>293</b>
<b>VOCABULARIES TO THE FIRST FOUR PIECES OF TRANSLATION . . . . .</b>		<b>310</b>
<b>LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY . . . . .</b>		<b>312</b>
<b>ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY . . . . .</b>		<b>331</b>

## RULES FOR THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

### VOWELS.

The following is approximately the pronunciation of the vowels :—

ā (prātum), as *a* in *father*, not as *ay* in *play*.

ă (răpit), the same sound shortened, as the first *a* in *aha*.

ē (mēta), as *a* in *māte*, not as *e* in *meet*.

ĕ (frēta), as *e* in *frēt*.

ī (fido), as *ee* in *seed*, not as *i* in *fire*.

ĭ (plîco), as *i* in *fit*.

ō (nōtus), as *o* in *note*.

ŏ (nōta), as *o* in *not*.

ū (tūto), as *oo* in *tool*, not as *u* (*yew*) in *acute*.

û (cūtis), the same sound shortened, as *u* in *full*, not as *u* (*yew*) in *accūtate*, nor as *u* in *shūn*.

### DIPHTHONGS.

The sounds of the diphthongs may be arrived at by running the two component vowel-sounds rapidly together, the second being pronounced lightly. The most important are :—

ae (portae) =  $\overbrace{a+e}$ , nearly as *ai* in *Isaiah* (broadly pronounced), not as *ay* in *play*.

au (aurum) =  $\overbrace{a+u}$ , nearly as *ou* in *hour*, not as *aw* in *awful*.

oe (poena) =  $\overbrace{o+e}$ , nearly as *oi* in *boil*, not as *ea* in *Dean*, nor as *ay* in *play*.

### CONSONANTS.

The other consonants are pronounced as in English ; but **c**, **g**, **t**, **s** are always hard :—

**c** (*cepi, accepi, scio*), as *c* in *cat*, *cc* in *Malacca*, *se* in *scandal*, not as in *acid*, *accept*, *fascinate*.

**g** (*gero, agger*), as *g* in *get* and *gg* in *ragged*, not as in *gin* or *exaggerate*.

**t** (*fortis, fortia*), as *t* in *native*.

**s** (*rosa, res*), as *s* in *sit*, *this*, not as *s* in *rise*.

In accordance with this rule, **-ci-**, **-si-**, **-ti-**, e.g. *ocitus*, *sponsio*, *natio*, are never to be pronounced like **-sh-**, as in *appreciate*, *responsions*, *nation*.

**i** and **u** consonantal.

**i** (*j*), e.g. *jacio*, as *y* in *you*, not as *j* in *jam*.

**u** (*v*), e.g. *volo*, practically as *w* in *we*, not as *v* in *very*.

**r** is always rolled or trilled (as in Scotch, and in continental languages), even in the middle and at the end of words.

---

The above directions are taken from the Circular of the Board of Education to Secondary Schools. Here and there one or two alterations have been incorporated from other similar schemes, for the sake of simplicity.

A few additional suggestions may be of use :—

1. *Qui* should be pronounced much as *kwee*, and *cui* as *koo-ee*, much as if it were *coo-y*, only taking care not to make two syllables of it (Postgate).
2. Words like *maius* (*majus*) and *eius* (*ejus*) should be pronounced *mai-yus*, *ei-yus*.
3. *bs*, as in *urbs*, should be pronounced as *ps* in *cups*, not as *bz* in *tubs* (so *urps*, but *urbis*) ; and *bt*, as in *obtineo*, as *pt*.

## LATIN COURSE.

### SECTION 1.

#### FIRST DECLENSION : SINGULAR.

Learn :—

Nominative case, Mensā *a table.*

Accusative case, Mensam *a table.*

Genitive case, Mensae *of a table (or) a table's.*

Dative case, Mensae *to (or) for a table.*

Ablative case, Mensā *by, with, (or) from a table.*

Write down in the same way :—

vīta *life.*

fōnestra *a window.*

cōlōnia *the colony.*

### SECTION 2.

#### THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

We say in English “I strike *him*,” not “I strike *he*,” and “He strikes *me*,” not “He strikes *I*;” for in these sentences the persons who strike are put in the nominative, and the persons whom they strike in the accusative. But very few words in English, as it is spoken and written

nowadays,<sup>1</sup> have an accusative case different from the nominative. We say, for instance, “The stone struck me” and “I struck the stone,” and the word “stone” is not altered as “me” is to “I.” In Latin, on the other hand, most words have an accusative case different from the nominative, and great care must be taken to use the accusative when the noun in English follows the verb. In such a sentence, therefore, as “He strikes the table,” *the table* would be “mensam.”

*Obs.* In putting the Latin sentences into English an *a* or a *the* will have often to be added, whichever of the two seems the more suitable.

The English of the words is to be found on p. 293.

(1.)

1. Puella Julianam laudat.
2. Julia puellam laudat.
3. Cornelia mensam ornat.
4. Cornelius Julianum amat.
5. Puella Corneliam amat.
6. Julia rosam laudat.
7. Puella Julianam amat.
8. Cornelius rosam laudat.
9. Puella mensam laudat.
10. Julia Corneliam ornat.
11. Cornelius puellam laudat.
12. Julia Corneliam amat.

<sup>1</sup> English used to be more like Latin in this respect; for “tunge” (now ‘tongue’) used to have an accusative ‘tungam’.

## (2.)

1. Cornelia praises Julia.
2. Julia praises Cornelia.
3. Cornelia loves the girl.
4. The girl praises the rose.
5. Julia praises the table.
6. Julia loves the girl.
7. Cornelia praises the table.
8. Julia decorates the table.

## SECTION 3.

FIRST DECLENSION : SINGULAR—(*Continued*).

[Other cases than the accusative.]

## (3.)

1. Puella mensam regīnae ornat.
2. Julia Corneliae mensam dat.
3. Puella reginam semper laudat.
4. Puella Juliae rosam saepe dat.
5. Cornelia puellae epistūlam dat.
6. Cornelia mensam Juliae ornat.
7. Regina epistulam puellae laudat.
8. Regina puellae epistulam dat.
9. Puella Corneliae epistulam dat.
10. Cornelia! puella mensam semper ornat.
11. Puella reginac mensam dat.
12. Julia semper, Cornelia saepe, puellam laudat.

## (4.)

1. The queen of Italy praises the girl.
2. Julia always praises the girl's letter.
3. The girl gives a letter to the queen.
4. Cornelia always praises the girl.
5. The girl decorates the table with a rose.
6. The queen often gives a rose to the girl.
7. Julia! the queen gives a letter to the girl.
8. The girl often decorates the table of the queen.

## SECTION 4.

## FIRST DECLENSION: PLURAL.

Learn :—

Nom.	Mensae	<i>tables.</i>
Acc.	Mensas	<i>tables.</i>
Gen.	Mensarum	<i>of tables.</i>
Dat.	Mensis	<i>to (or) for tables.</i>
Abl.	Mensis	<i>by, with, (or) from tables.</i>

## (5.)

1. Puellae mensas habent.
2. Mensae rosas habent.
3. Puella saepe mensas ornat.
4. Puellae saepe mensam ornant.
5. Puella hodie rosas habet.
6. Puellae saepe Julianam laudant.
7. Julia saepe mensas ornat.

8. Mensa hodie rosas habet.
9. Puellae hodie mensas habent.
10. Julia hodie mensam habet.
11. Julia hodie puellam saepe laudat.
12. Cornelia rosas laudat.
13. Puellae Julianam amant.
14. Julia rosas amat.

(6.)

1. The girls have roses to-day.
2. Julia loves the girls.
3. The girl has a table.
4. Cornelia praises the girls to-day.
5. The girls decorate the tables to-day.
6. Julia always has roses.
7. The girl often decorates the tables.
8. Julia praises the girl to-day.
9. The girls often decorate the table.
10. Cornelia always praises the roses.

(7.)

1. Puellae mensam reginac ornant.
2. Puella mensas reginae ornat.
3. Regina puellam semper laudat.
4. Puella mensam reginac rosis ornat.
5. Julia epistulas reginarum saepe habet.
6. Regina epistulam puellarum laudat.
7. Puellae reginam Italiae amant.
8. Puellae rosis semper mensam reginac ornant.

9. *Regina semper rosas puellae laudat.*
10. *Puellae epistulas reginarum habent.*

(8.)

1. The queen often praises the girl's letters.
2. The girls praise the roses of Italy.
3. Julia has the girl's letter to-day.
4. The girls decorate the queen's table with roses.
5. Cornelia always praises the letters of the girls.
6. The Queen of Italy has the girl's letter.
7. Julia praises the queen's letter to-day.
8. The queen has the girl's letters.

(9.)

1. *Regina puellae mensam dat.*
2. *Puellae reginae saepe rosas dant.*
3. *Regina hodie puellas saepe laudat.*
4. *Puella reginae semper epistulas dat.*
5. *Regina puellam, puella reginam, amat.*
6. *Regina puellis mensas dat.*
7. *PuellaeJuliae epistulam dant.*
8. *ReginaJuliae rosam, Corneliae mensam, dat.*

(10.)

1. *Julia gives letters to the girls.*
2. *The girls give a letter to Julia.*
3. *The Queen of Italy gives roses to the girls.*
4. *Cornelia praises Julia's letters.*
5. *Julia gives roses to the girl.*
6. *The girl decorates Julia's table with the roses.*

## SECTION 5.

## SECOND DECLENSION : NOUNS IN -US.

The greater number of masculine nouns of the second declension end in the nominative singular in *-us*, and are declined like :—

*Singular.*

Nom.	Dōmīnūs.	<i>a master.</i>
Acc.	Dōmīnum	<i>a master.</i>
Gen.	Dōmīni	<i>of a master (or) a master's.</i>
Dat.	Dōmīno	<i>to (or) for a master.</i>
Abl.	Dōmīno	<i>by, with, (or) from a master.</i>

*Plural.*

Nom.	Dōmīni	<i>masters.</i>
Acc.	Dōmīnōs	<i>masters.</i>
Gen.	Dōmīnōrum	<i>of masters.</i>
Dat.	Dōmīnis	<i>to (or) for masters.</i>
Abl.	Dōmīnis	<i>by, with, (or) from masters.</i>

The Latin for “O master !” or “Master !” is *Domine*. *Domine* is called the Vocative Case. In all other nouns but those in *-us* of this declension the Vocative is the same as the Nominative Case.

*Obs.* In putting the Latin sentences into English *a his*, *her*, or *their* will have sometimes to be added. It follows that, in turning the English sentences into Latin, these words (for the present put in *italics*) should be passed over.

## (11.)

1. Dominus servum laudat.
2. Servi dominum amant.
3. Domini amicos laudant.
4. Marcus servos videt.
5. Dominus reginam saepe videt.
6. Domini servos saepe laudant.
7. Marcus Julianum amat.
8. Amici Marcum laudant.
9. Domine! regina servos laudat.
10. Marcus hodie amicum laudat.

## (12.)

1. The slaves praise *their*<sup>1</sup> master.
2. The masters praise *their* slaves.
3. The slave has a friend.
4. Marcus praises *his* slave to-day.
5. Julia praises the slaves.
6. The slave praises the girls.
7. The girls decorate the queen's table with roses.
8. The slaves often praise *their* master.
9. Marcus praises the Queen of Italy.
10. The slave sees *his* master.

## (13.)

1. Dominus servis epistulam dat.
2. Regina epistulam servi laudat.

<sup>1</sup> Words in *italics* are left out in translation into Latin.

3. Servi mensam domini ornant.
4. Julia servo rosam dat.
5. Servi dominis epistulas dant.
6. Servi dominus epistulam habet.
7. Puella amicis rosas dat.
8. Regina Marco mensam dat.
9. Amici epistulam domini habent.
10. Regina Corneliae epistulam puellae dat.

## (14.)

1. The queen gives letters to *her* slaves.
2. Julia has *her* friend's letter.
3. The queens praise Marcus's letter.
4. The slaves have the letters of *their* masters.
5. Marcus often praises *his* slaves.
6. The slave gives a rose to *his* master.
7. The slaves give *their* master a letter to-day.
8. The master praises the letters of *his* slaves.
9. The queen sees the girl's letter.
10. The slaves often see *their* master.

## SECTION 6.

## SECOND DECLENSION : NEUTER NOUNS.

The neuter nouns of the second declension end in *-um*; and, like all neuter nouns, they have the nominative and accusative cases, both in the singular and plural, alike:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	Bellum	<i>war.</i>	Nom.	Bellā
Acc.	Bellum	<i>war.</i>	Acc.	Bellā
Gen.	Belli	<i>of war.</i>	Gen.	Bellōrum
Dat.	Bello	<i>to war.</i>	Dat.	Bellis
Abl.	Bello	<i>by war.</i>	Abl.	Bellis

## (15.)

1. Praemium domini servos delectat.
2. Servi arma dominorum habent.
3. Dominus servo praemium dat.
4. Bellum Germanos delectat.
5. Julia et Cornelia rosas semper habent.
6. Marcus diligentiam servorum saepe laudat.
7. Bellum dominum et servum delectat.
8. Germani diligentiam amant et laudant.
9. Domini servis praemium dant.
10. Servi mensam domini hodie ornant.
11. Regina diligentiamJuliae et Corneliae laudat.
12. Puella arma Marci videt et laudat.

## (16.)

1. War pleases the slaves.
2. The reward of the queen pleases the girls.
3. The Germans love arms.
4. The queen praises the diligence of the slave.
5. Marcus loves and praises war.
6. The arms of Marcus please *his* friend.
7. The queen gives rewards to the girl.
8. The slaves have *their* master's arms.
9. The letters of *their* slaves please the masters.
10. The lord gives rewards to *his* slaves to-day.

## SECTION 7.

SECOND DECLENSION—(*Continued*) : ADJECTIVES IN -US -A -UM SINGULAR.

These adjectives are thus declined :—

	<i>Masculine</i> (like <i>Dominus</i> .)	<i>Feminine</i> (like <i>Mensa</i> .)	<i>Neuter</i> . (like <i>Bellum</i> .)
Nom.	Bōnus	bonā	bonum.
Acc.	Bonum	bonam	bonum.
Gen.	Boni	bonae	boni.
Dat.	Bono	bonae	bono.
Abl.	Bono	bonā	bono.

Adjectives must be put in the same gender and the same case of the singular or plural as the nouns with which they go.

	<i>Masculine</i> .	<i>Feminine</i> .	<i>Neuter</i> .
Nom.	<i>Dominus bonus</i>	mensā longā	bellum longum.
Acc.	<i>Dominum bonum</i>	mensam longam	bellum longum.
Gen.	<i>Domi<i>n</i>i boni</i>	mensae longae	belli longi.
Dat.	<i>Dominō bono</i>	mensae longae	bello longo.
Abl.	<i>Dominō bono</i>	mensā longū	bello longo.

(17.)

1. Amicus mens<sup>1</sup> amicium tuum laudat.

<sup>1</sup> [*Mens* and *tuis* are (as a general rule) put after the nouns with which they go. Other adjectives also are often so placed. The pupil will perhaps find it more convenient at first, in translating English into Latin, to put the adjectives after the nouns, with which they have to agree.]

2. Servus bonus semper dominum laudat.
3. Marcus servum tuum saepe videt.
4. Dominus diligentiam fidi servi semper laudat.
5. Regina Marco, amico tuo, servum dat.
6. Regina diligentiam bonae puellae laudat.
7. Servus domino epistulam meam dat.
8. Regina puellae fidiae praemium dat.
9. Marcus longam amici epistulam habet.
10. Amici praemium meum vident.

(18.)

1. Marcus praises the diligence of your slave to-day.
2. The master gives a reward to *his* good slave.
3. The good master praises the diligence of *his* slaves.
4. The queen gives a rose to my friend.
5. The master often praises *his* faithful slave.
6. The slaves see *their* master's long letter.
7. Marcus and Julia see my letter.
8. The queen praises the good girl.
9. The slaves decorate the queen's table with roses.
10. A long war delights the Germans.

(19.)

1. Marcus arma tua servo dat.
2. Servi mensam meam rosas ornant.
3. Dominus amico fido mensam dat.
4. Puella diligentiam tuam saepe laudat.
5. Puellae longam mensam saepe ornant.
6. Marcus servo multa praemia dat.

7. Longa epistula reginam delectat.
8. Marcus diligentiam meam saepe laudat.
9. Marcus, amicus meus, puellam amat.
10. Regina servo meo praemium diligentiae dat.

(20.)

1. The slaves are decorating *their* master's table with roses.
2. The girl has my rose.
3. The girls have my arms.
4. My friend praises my diligence.
5. Marcus gives the letter to *his* faithful friend.
6. The girl often sees the faithful slave.
7. Marcus praises my master.
8. Julia loves my friend Marcus.
9. The queen praises the diligence of your friend.
10. Master! your slaves have the letter.

## SECTION 8.

SECOND DECLENSION—(*Continued*) : ADJECTIVES IN -US,  
PLURAL.

These Adjectives are declined in the plural so:—

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Boni	bonae	bonā.
Acc.	Bonos	bonas	bonā.
Gen.	Bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum.
Dat.	Bonis	bonis	bonis.
Abl.	Bonis	bonis	bonis.

## (21.)

1. Dominus multos et bonos servos habet.
2. Fidi servi dominum amant.
3. Boni servi multos amicos semper habent.
4. Regina diligentiam amicorum meorum laudat.
5. Dominus fidis servis praemia dat.
6. Bonae puellae arna tua habent.
7. Regina multas epistulas habet.
8. Germani multa arma habent.
9. Puella bonas reginas amat.
10. Puellae mensas tuas, regina, ornant.

## (22.)

1. Marcus has many friends.
2. Marcus often sees my friends.
3. The master gives rewards to *his* good slaves.
4. Slaves always love good masters.
5. The girls give your roses to the queen.
6. Julia praises the diligence of the good girls.
7. The girls have my letters.
8. Julia! the girl has your and my letters.
9. The good girls adorn Julia with many roses.
10. The girl gives many letters to the queen.

## (23.)

1. Dominus diligentiam bonorum servorum laudat.
2. Puellae mensam longam multis roseis ornant.
3. Multi domini diligentiam servorum laudant.
4. Julia pueris bonis epistulam longam dat.

5. Longae epistulae puellam delectant.
6. Puella reginae multas epistulas dat.
7. Amici mei puellis multa praemia dant.
8. Dominus epistulas servorum fidorum habet.
9. Regina epistulam bonarum puellarum laudat.
10. Puella bona multas rosas habet.
11. Regiae bonae fidis puellis multas rosas dant.
12. Dominus fido servo arma dat.

(24.)

1. The queen gives many rewards to the girl.
2. The girl loves the good queens.
3. Your friend gives many roses to the girl.
4. Julia often has many roses.
5. The good queen praises the diligence of my friends.
6. His friend gives your arms to Marcus.
7. Julia gives many letters to Marcus.
8. The good queen always loves good girls.
9. The Germans praise long wars.
10. The girl gives my letters to Julia.
11. My slave gives a long letter to Marcus.
12. Marcus to-day has many rewards.

## SECTION 9.

SECOND DECLENSION—(*Continued*). Nouns and  
Adjectives in -er.

To the second declension belong also many nouns and adjectives ending in -er. Most of these drop the *e* in the other cases :—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Mägister	magistri.
Acc.	Magistrum	magistros.
Gen.	Magistri	magistrorum.
Dat.	Magistro	magistris.
Abl.	Magistro	magistris.

A few, however, keep the *e* throughout:—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Puer	pueri.
Acc.	Puérum	pueros.
Gen.	Pueri	puerorum.
Dat.	Puero	pueris.
Abl.	Puero	pueris.

*Vir* is declined like *puer*.

### (25.)

1. Magister puerum laudat.
2. Puer magistrum amat.
3. Regina diligentiam virorum laudat.
4. Puer magistro librum dat.
5. Pueri magistris libros dant.
6. Magister librum pueri videt.
7. Puer libros amat.
8. Magister puero librum dat.

### (26.)

1. The masters give the books to the boys.
2. The boys see the books of *their* masters.
3. The masters praise *their* boys.

4. The queen often gives books to the men.
5. The master praises the diligence of the boys.
6. The masters often praise the boy.

## (27.)

1. Pueris bonis amici libros dant.
2. Puer bonus multos libros habet.
3. Puella reginae librum pulchrum dat.
4. Vir bonus amigos miseros amat.
5. Puer amicum meum miserum amat.
6. Servi boni dominos miseros amant.
7. Magister pueris bonis libros dat.
8. Dominus servos miseros laudat.
9. Servi boni domino librum dant.
10. Dominus miser epistulam servorum videt.

## (28.)

1. The unhappy boys praise the queen's tables.
2. The good man gives a table to *his* slave.
3. The good lord praises the arms of the faithful slave.
4. The unhappy slaves see *their* lord to-day.
5. The boy gives my books to *his* master.
6. The master gives good books to *his* boys.
7. Your friend sees the queen's unhappy slaves.
8. My book praises diligence.
9. The good slave sees *his* master's letters.
10. Your boy loves my friends.

## (29.)

1. Regina puellam pulchram amat.
2. Puella mensam rosis pulchriss ornat.
3. Regina libros puellarum pulchrarum laudat.
4. Puellae bonae pueris miseris rosas dant.
5. Puella reginae miserae rosas pulchras dat.
6. Multi pueri magistris epistulas longas dant.
7. Regina puellac miserae libros bonos dat.
8. Boni viri reginam miseram amant.
9. Puer puellac rosam pulchram saepe dat.
10. Libri pueros miseros hodie delectant.

## (30.)

1. The good man always praises the unhappy queen.
2. The unhappy man loves the beautiful girl.
3. The good girl often gives books to the unhappy queen.
4. The queen praises the girl's beautiful books.
5. The slaves praise the beautiful table of *their* masters.
6. The unhappy girl loves the good queen.
7. The queen often gives beautiful roses to the unhappy girl.
8. The good girls love the unhappy queen.
9. The masters give many letters to *their* slaves.
10. The queen always praises the good girl's diligence.

## SECTION 10.

EST—SUNT.

*Est, is : sunt, are.*

The Latin for “Julia is queen” is *Julia est regina* (not *reginam*). The rule that the accusative is to be put after the verb does not apply to the verb “to be.”

It is not right to say in English, “It is *me*,” and “It is *him*,” but “It is *I*,” and “it is *he*.” So in Latin, *est Julia* (not *Julium*) will stand for “It is Julia.”

Be careful, too, to notice that the adjective has to agree with its noun none the less because *est* or *sunt* comes between them. So the Latin for “the rose is beautiful” is *rosa est pulchra*.

(31.)

1. Mensa est longa.
2. Rosae sunt pulchrae.
3. Servus est fidus.
4. Puer est miser.
5. Puella est pulchra.
6. Libri sunt pulchri.
7. Epistula est longa.
8. Puellae pulchrae sunt.
9. Mensa alta est.
10. Arma pulchra sunt.
11. Regina pulchra est.
12. Vir bonus non est miser.

13. Mensa longa et alta est.  
 14. Libri amico meo grati sunt.

## (32.)

1. The letter is welcome.
2. The garden is beautiful.
3. The tables are long.
4. The slaves are faithful.
5. Italy is beautiful.
6. The table is full.
7. The roses are beautiful.
8. The slaves are active.
9. The boy is active.
10. *He* is a good man.
11. The slaves of Marcus are faithful.

## (33.)

1. Puella gratam amici epistulam laudat.
2. Mensa magistri plena librorum est.
3. Magister diligentiam puerorum non laudat.
4. Puellae altam reginae mensam rosis ornant.
5. Horti reginae pleni rosarum sunt.
6. Magister Julianam laudat, Corneliam culpat.
7. Horti pulchri pueris et puellis grati sunt.
8. Epistula reginae bonis puellis grata est.
9. Balbus, bonus puer, miserae puellae librum dat.
10. Magistri diligentiam puerorum bonorum saepe laudant.
11. Hortus reginae semper plenus rosarum est.
12. Magister pigros pueros culpat, impigros laudat.

13. Magister pueris praemium non dat; non sunt boni.
14. Longa Marci epistula puellae miserae grata est.
15. Pueri sunt miseri: magister diligentiam non laudat.
16. Magister pueros culpat; semper sunt pigri.

## (34.)

1. The master is a good man.
2. Julia is queen of Italy.
3. The queen blames the lazy girls.
4. The lord's garden is full of roses.
5. A good man praises diligence.
6. Books are often the rewards of diligence.
7. Balbus is often a lazy boy.
8. The lord always blames the lazy slave.
9. The lord blames *his* slaves; *they* are not faithful.
10. Marcus is my friend, not yours.
11. The boy praises my friends and yours.
12. Your lord is a friend of the queen's.
13. Girls are not always beautiful.
14. Books are not always welcome to boys.

## SECTION 11.

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

## Exceptions to Gender.

The rule is that nouns in *-a* are feminine, nouns in *-us* and *-er* masculine, and nouns in *-um* neuter. To this rule, however, there are a few exceptions.

- (1.) The meaning shows that such nouns as these are masculine: Sulla, a great Roman; agricola, a husbandman; poëta, nauta (see Vocabulary).
- (2.) The names of trees and of towns are feminine; for instance—fagus, Corinthus.
- (3.) Vulgus is neuter, humus (the ground) is feminine.

## (35.)

1. Poëta clarus Julianum laudat.
2. Fagus alta et lata est.
3. Italia claros poetas habet.
4. Puella multos saepe nautas vident.
5. Poëta claram Corinthum laudat.
6. Regina bono nautae praemia dat.
7. Puellae altam fagum in horto vident.
8. Hortus plenus altarum fagorum est.
9. Puellae Corinthum plenam nautarum vident.
10. Pueri sub (under) alta fago puellam vident.

## (36.)

1. The boys love the broad beech-tree.
2. The beech-tree is broad, the poplar is high.
3. The poet loves the high poplar.
4. Corinth is welcome to the sailors.
5. The poet blames the common people.
6. The queen blames the lazy common people.
7. The queen gives a rose to the celebrated poet.
8. Corinth is full of sailors.
9. The poets do not love the common people.
10. Corinth is full of gardens.

## (37.)

1. *Regina nautam impigrum laudat, pigrum culpat.*
2. *Multi poetae reginam semper laudant.*
3. *Poeta Germanus bellum laudat.*
4. *Regina clari diligentiam poetae saepe laudat.*
5. *Regina claro poetae longam epistulam dat.*
6. *Multi nautae Corinthum saepe vident.*
7. *Puella fido nautae rosam cotidie dat.*
8. *Anicus meus clarum poetam cotidie laudat.*
9. *Puella misero poetae multas rosas dat.*
10. *Puellae hodie in horto sunt, Balbe!*

## (38.)

1. *The common people do not praise (sing.) the poets.*
2. *The slaves adorn Marcus's broad table every day.*
3. *The celebrated poet praises the beautiful girl every day.*
4. *The lord praises the diligence of your slaves to-day.*
5. *The master blames the wretched boys.*
6. *My friend gives your books to the poet.*
7. *The slaves see Marcus's books in the garden.*
8. *Balbus's books are in the garden.*
9. *The poet gives a letter to the girl every day.*
10. *The German poet often praises the celebrated queen.*

## I.

## A Letter of a Father to his Boy at School.

*(Words on p. 310.)*

Epistula magistri tui, Balbe, grata et juemda mihi fuit. Nam diligentiam tuam laudat, et scribit : "Filius tuus bonus puer et industrius est." Mater tibi pulchrum librum, praemium diligentiae tuae, mittit. Soror tua hodie sex annos habet. Cotidie me rogit : "Quando, pater, revertet frater ?" Vale !

## II.

## Romulus and Remus.

*(Words on p. 310.)*

Dum Romulus muros Romae multa diligentia aedificat, Remus, frater, puer piger et improbus, parvos adhuc muros saepe transsilit. Verbis contumeliosis Romulum compellat. "Carissime frater, quam magnifici sunt muri tui ! inimicos tuos egregie arcent !" Romulus, autem, plenus irae, Remum occidit. Tum feliciter muros conficit.

## III.

## The Black Slave.

*(Words on p. 311.)*

Agrippa nigrum servum habebat. Pueri, autem, miserum servum in plateis rident. "En," clamant, "quam niger est ! Serve, nemo te lavat ?" Dominus, tamen, vir bonus et validus, improbos pueros audit. Plenus irae pueros capillo arripit. Frustra clamant ; frustra lacrimas fundunt. Cunctos sine mora in atramentum demergit.

## SECTION 12.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

The case-endings for masculine and feminine nouns of this declension are :—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. —	-es.
Acc. -em	-es.
Gen. -is	-um.
Dat. -i	-ibus.
Abl. -e	-ibus.

Some nouns, *soror*, *clamor*, *mulier*, for instance, are declined by adding these endings to the nominative singular. *Soror* therefore is declined :—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Soror	sorores.
Acc. Sorōrem	sorores.
Gen. Sororis	sororum.
Dat. Sorori	sororibus.
Abl. Sorore	sororibus.

(39.)

1. Pueri puellas clamōre terrent.
2. Puer puellam clamoribus terret.
3. Puer bonus a sorore laudatur.
4. Mulier reginac multas epistulas dat.
5. Puer mulierem clamoribus terret.
6. Servi fidi hodie a dominis laudantur.

7. Mulieres mensam reginae ornant.
8. Vir bonus mulieribus libros dat.
9. Balbus a Julia amatur.
10. Amicus meus sororemJuliae saepe violet

(40.)

1. The boys love *their* sisters.
2. The boy blames *his* sister to-day.
3. *His* sister often blames the boy.
4. Marcus has the books of the slaves.
5. The shouting of the boys frightens the girls.
6. The shouts of the girls frighten the queen.
7. The queen praises the woman's letter.
8. Marcus gives a book to the woman.
9. Julia has the women's roses.
10. The boy gives a rose to *his* sisters.

(41.)

1. Nautae clamoribus Marcum terrent.
2. Puer miser sororem clamore terret.
3. Marcus a sorore poetae amatur.
4. Nautae reginam clamore terrent.
5. Magister puero librum, praemium diligentiae, dat.
6. Clamores nautarum poetam terrent.
7. Balbus a Julia, Marcus a Cornelia, amatur.
8. Pueri a sorore semper laudantur.
9. Pueros pigros magister semper culpat.
10. Pueri clamoribus mulieres saepe terrent.
11. Vir bonus mulierem nunquam terret.

12. Poeta miser sorores nunquam videt.
13. Poeta clarus a bona regina laudatur.
14. Puer sorori librum, soror pueru arma, dat.
15. Pueri sunt pigri; nunquam praeemia habent.

(42.)

1. Julia's sisters give a book to the boy.
2. Julia praises *her* sister's diligence.
3. Wars frighten women.
4. Cornelia gives a reward to *her* sister.
5. The sailors' shouting frightens the queen.
6. The boys' sisters have the roses.
7. The queen praises the diligence of *her* sisters.
8. The boy gives the poet's books to *his* sister.
9. The lord frightens *his* lazy slaves.
10. *His* sister praises the unhappy boy.
11. The master blames the shouting.
12. The boy sees *his* sister in the garden.
13. The shouts of the boys frighten the woman.
14. The women praise the roses of your garden.
15. The poet loves the sister of the beautiful Julia.

## SECTION 13.

### THIRD DECLENSION—(*Continued*).

The Gender shown by meaning.

The meaning of some words shows their gender: *mercator*, a merchant, is masculine; *mulier*, a woman, is

feminine. "A good merchant," and "a good woman," will therefore be declined thus:—

*Singular.*

Nom.	Bonus mercator.
Acc.	Bonum mercatōrem.
Gen.	Boni mercatoris.
Dat.	Bono mercatori.
Abl.	Bono mercatore.

*Plural.*

Nom.	boni mercatores.
Acc.	bonos mercatores.
Gen.	bonorum mercatorum.
Dat.	bonis mercatoribus.
Abl.	bonis mercatoribus.

*Singular.*

Nom.	Bona mulier.
Acc.	Bonam muliērem.
Gen.	Bonac mulieris.
Dat.	Bonae mulieri.
Abl.	Bona muliere.

*Plural.*

Nom.	bonae mulieres.
Acc.	bonas mulieres.
Gen.	bonarum mulierum.
Dat.	bonis mulieribus.
Abl.	bonis mulieribus.

"By" must be translated by the preposition *a* (*ub* always before a vowel, and often before consonants), followed by the ablative before a person: otherwise the ablative by itself is enough. So:—

Regina a bono mercatore laudatur.

*The queen is praised by the good merchant.*

Regina clamoribus puerorum terretur.

*The queen is frightened by the shouts of the boys.*

(43.)

1. Orator clarus reginam laudat.
2. Balbus claros majores habet.
3. Regina ab oratore claro laudatur.
4. Orator majores tuos laudat.

5. Alexander sorori tuae rosam dat.
6. Multi oratores reginam laudant.
7. Puer libros clarorum oratorum laudat.
8. Oratores et poetae Italiae clari sunt.
9. Mercator Germanus reginae vinum dat.
10. Pueri clamoribus sororem meam terrent.

## (44.)

1. Alexander has many sisters.
2. The queen is praised by my sisters.
3. The lord gives money to the active merchant.
4. The poet praises the queen's beautiful sisters.
5. The poet gives *his* book to the celebrated orator.
6. The celebrated orator praises the common people.
7. Your ancestors are praised by the orator.
8. The good merchants give rewards to the sailors.
9. The orator praises the gardens of the celebrated Corinth.
10. The boy praises the long books of the orators.

## (45.)

1. Regina a multis oratoribus laudatur.
2. Marcus sororem meam amat et saepe laudat.
3. Magister diligentiam sororum mearum laudat.
4. Regina bonis mulieribus pecuniam dat.
5. Balbus diligentiam majorum meorum saepe laudat.
6. Marcus, vir bonus, misericordis servis saepe pecuniam dat.
7. Clamores puerorum miseras mulieres terrent.
8. Orator poetam, poeta oratorem, laudat.

9. Bella Alexandri clara sunt.
10. Servus domino vinum cotidie dat.
11. Mensa Balbi lata, Alexandri longa, est.
12. Vinum servo meo gratum est.
13. Servi mei Balbum et Marcum cotidie vident.
14. Dominus saepe servos clamore terret.
15. Mercatoribus bella non semper grata sunt.

(46.)

1. The queen praises the faithful women.
2. The faithful women are praised by the queen.
3. The lord praises the merchant's wine.
4. The queen often praises the diligence of the German merchants.
5. The boy loves *his* sister, and is praised by *his* sister.
6. The merchant's gardens are full of beautiful roses.
7. The orator praises the wars of the Germans.
8. The girl praises the diligence of the active women.
9. The German poet loves Italy.
10. *There* are many poplars and many beech-trees in the orator's garden.
11. The boy often has the books of *his* sisters.
12. The queen praises the diligence of the merchants every day.
13. The slaves give the letters to the merchant every day.
14. The good merchant gives money to the sailor.
15. The queen gives wine to the poet, money to the orator.

## SECTION 14.

THIRD DECLENSION—(*Continued*): THE STEM.

The nouns of the third declension which have been given so far have been declined by adding the case-endings to the nominative singular. But in order to decline the greater number of nouns of this declension it is necessary to know another case as well. *Judex*, a judge, for instance, is thus declined:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	<i>Judex.</i>	Nom.	<i>judices.</i>
Acc.	<i>Judicem.</i>	Acc.	<i>judices.</i>
Gen.	<i>Judicis.</i>	Gen.	<i>judicum.</i>
Dat.	<i>Judici.</i>	Dat.	<i>judicibus.</i>
Abl.	<i>Judice.</i>	Abl.	<i>judicibus.</i>

It is not to *judex*, but to *judic-*, that the case-endings are added.<sup>1</sup>

(47.)

1. *Militibus Germanis bellum gratum est.*
2. *Regina diligentiam militum laudat.*
3. *Soror parvo fratri bonum librum dat.*
4. *Fratres praemiis reginae contenti sunt.*
5. *Rex militibus hodie contentus est.*

<sup>1</sup> English words derived from the Latin sometimes help one to remember how a Latin noun is declined; the word "military" reminds one that *miles* makes *militem*, etc., so "judicial," *judex*, *judicem*: "regal," *rex*, *regem*; "margin," *margo*, *marginem*: "capital," *caput*, *capitis*; and many others.

6. *Regina regem in horto videt.*
7. *Rex claros reginae majores laudat.*
8. *Julia libros fratrum non habet.*
9. *Reges mercatoribus magnam pecuniam dant.*
10. *Nauta multos fratres et multis sorores habet.*
11. *Horti regum magni et pleni hodie rosarum sunt.*
12. *Regina militibus magnam pecuniam saepe dat.*

(48.)

1. Wars do not frighten the soldier.
2. The girl is praised by the soldier.
3. The soldiers frighten the girl by *their* shouts.
4. The good brothers give money to *their* sisters.
5. Julia is never praised by my brother.
6. The slaves give *their* lord's letters to the king.
7. The orators *are* always praising kings and queens.
8. The soldiers give roses to the women.
9. The king gives money to the lazy common people.
10. The shouts of the common people frighten the king.
11. Your sisters see my brother in the garden.
12. The good king praises the beautiful queen.

(49.)

1. Miles puellam pulchram amat.
2. *Regina impigris militibus praemia dat.*
3. Magister saepe fratrem culpat, sororem semper laudat.
4. Milites praeiniis reginae contenti sunt.

5. Rex nautis et militibus multa saepe praemia dat.
6. Magister me culpat, te laudat.
7. Clamores militum me saepe terrent.
8. Rex vulgus culpat; nunquam contentum est.
9. Reges filis militibus magna praemia dant.
10. Marcus fidus regum amicus semper est.
11. Bella longa militibus regis semper grata sunt.
12. Milites nunquam contenti sunt.
13. Fratres tui miseri sunt: nunquam a magistro laudantur.
14. Regina fratribus meis, Marco et Alexandro, multos libros dat.
15. Nauta militem, miles nautam, laudat.
16. Te, amice, magistri nunquam laudant, me semper.
17. Frater meus clarus est: semper a militibus laudatur.
18. Magnam regis mensam servi multis rosis ornant.
19. Pueri cotidie pigri sunt; libros nunquam habent.
20. Domini servis, servi dominis, nunquam sunt contenti.

(50.)

1. War is welcome to the soldiers.
2. Marcus is a soldier, Alexander a sailor.
3. *Their* sisters are always loved by *their* brothers.
4. My brothers are always active.
5. The merchants give good wine to the kings.
6. Julia loves a soldier, Cornelia a sailor.
7. The king gives a large sum of money to the orators.

8. Marcus praises the active soldiers and sailors.
9. The brothers frighten *their* sisters by *their* shouts.
10. *O* queen, the poets always praise you!
11. My sisters love me, your sisters love you.
12. The brother gives many roses to *his* sister.
13. In the garden of the king there are broad beech-trees and high poplars.
14. The king, a good man, gives the poet's books to the active boys.
15. Books are always welcome to good kings.
16. The soldiers are praised by the good king.

## SECTION 15.

### THIRD DECLENSION : GENITIVE PLURAL.

Some nouns form their genitive plural, not in *-um*, but in *-ium*.

The general rule is that nouns, whose genitive singular has more syllables than the nominative singular, take *-um*; nouns which have the same number of syllables in these cases take *-ium*.

<i>Nom. Sing.</i>	<i>Gen. Sing.</i>	<i>Gen. Plur.</i>
miles	militis	militum.
rex	regis	regum.
orator	oratoris	oratorum.
hostis	hostis	hostium.
civis	civis	civium.
nāvis	navis	navium.

## (51.)

1. Milites copias hostium vident.
2. Rex magnas hostium copias videt.
3. Prorae navium altae sunt.
4. Clamores civium regem terrent.
5. Hostes hortos regum vastant.
6. Puer libros mulierum habet.
7. Oratores hostium regem non terrent.
8. Hostes agros civium vastant.
9. Regina diligentia militum contenta est.
10. Copiae hostium agros regum vastant.

## (52.)

1. The king praises the diligence of the citizens.
2. The sailors see the prows of the ships.
3. The brother praises the garden of his<sup>1</sup> sisters.
4. The slave sees the forces of the enemy.
5. The sailors decorate the prows of their<sup>1</sup> ships with roses.
6. The forces of the enemy do not frighten the king.
7. The slaves see the ships of the merchant.
8. The citizens lay waste the lands of the enemy.
9. Julia has a large number of sisters.
10. The king is satisfied with the diligence of the citizens.

## (53.)

1. Clamores hostium mulieres saepe

<sup>1</sup> *His, her, and their* are no longer printed in *italics*, but are still to be left out in Latin.

2. *Regina libros oratorum saepe lundat.*
3. *Orator diligentiam civium Germanorum laudat.*
4. *Nautae navibus hostium non terrentur.*
5. *Rex reginae epistulas sororum dat.*
6. *Hostes parvis copiis agros vastant.*
7. *Epistula hostium regi non grata est.*
8. *Hostes proras navium regum vident.*
9. *Regem, virum bonum, hostium clamores non terrent.*
10. *Rex numero navium contentus est.*
11. *Me clamores hostium nunquam terrent.*
12. *Regina hostium agros regis vastat.*

## (54.)

1. The sailors see the enemy's ships.
2. The slaves of my sisters are faithful.
3. The king is loved by his citizens.
4. The enemy see a large number of ships.
5. The shouts of the soldiers frighten the forces of the enemy.
6. The forces of the enemy frighten the unhappy citizens.
7. The king praises the diligence of his ancestors.
8. The boy sees the rewards of the active girls.
9. The ships of the enemy are praised by the king.
10. To the king of the enemy the war is welcome.
11. The king is satisfied to-day with the diligence of the soldiers.
12. The soldiers of the enemy frighten the citizens with their shouts.

## SECTION 16.

THIRD DECLENSION : GENITIVE PLURAL—(*Continued*).

Some nouns, however, although they have the same number of syllables in all the cases of the singular, make their genitive plural in *-um*: so do :—

pater, mater, frater,  
juvenis and senex.

And others again, which have more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative singular, make their genitive plural in *-ium*. Among these are :—

- (a) a number of words mostly of one syllable ending in an “s” following a consonant. What, then, is the genitive plural of—ars, artis (art), pars, partis (part), mens, mentis (mind), frons, frontis (front) ?
- (b) nox, os, vis, make—noctium, ossium, virium, and also some nouns mentioned farther on (p. 43).

## (55.)

1. Puellae epistulas matrum habent.
2. Pueri libros patrum habent.
3. Senes diligentiam majorum saepe laudant.
4. Germani partem Italiae vastant.
5. Copiae regiae agros hostium vastant.
6. Senum pars regem, pars reginam, culpat.
7. Senes verba juvenum culpant.
8. Servi navium regiarum partem vident.

9. Juvenum pars laudat, pars culpat poetam.
10. Puellae saepe libris matrum non sunt contentae.

## (56.)

1. The king praises the diligence of the young men.
2. The words of the orators frighten the citizens.
3. The king praises the words of the orators.
4. The words of the orators frighten the minds of the citizens.
5. The shouts of the citizens frighten the heart of the queen.
6. The old man blames the young man, the young man the old man.
7. The letters of their mothers are welcome to the boys.
8. The old man praises the diligence of the citizens.
9. The words of the old men do not frighten the enemy.
10. The words of the orator are praised by the citizens.

## (57.)

1. Copiae hostium partem agrorum regiorum vastant.
2. Clamores mulierum copias regias non terrent.
3. Verba tua me non terrent, orator!
4. Clamores hostium miseriarum animos matrum terrent.
5. Senex Marco, amico meo, multum vinum dat.
6. Puerorum partem culpat, partem laudat magister.
7. Parvae hostium copiae animos militum terrent.
8. Te, puer piger, magistri nunquam laudant!

9. Senex servis bonis et fidis pecuniam sacpe dat.
10. Mercatores nautis multa praemia et multum vinum dant.
11. Poeta hortos regios latarum fagorum plenos laudat.
12. Orator verbis, clamoribus vulgus, bonum regem terret.

(58.)

1. Wars are never welcome to mothers.
2. The sailor praises ships, the soldier war.
3. The common people frighten (sing.) the minds of the old men with many shouts.
4. The king of the enemy wastes the lands of the citizens with large forces.
5. The diligence of the sailors is praised by the old men.
6. The forces of the enemy lay waste the broad lands of the merchants.
7. The boys are praised by their fathers, the girls by their mothers.
8. The citizens see the ships of the enemy, and the royal forces.
9. My father blames me, my mother praises *me*.<sup>1</sup>
10. The merchant gives wine to the lord, money to the slave.
11. The royal gardens are full of high poplars and broad beech-trees.
12. The words of the old men are not always welcome to the minds of the young men.

<sup>1</sup> Words printed in *italics* are to be left out.

## IV.

## A Fable.

(Words on p. 311.)

Societatem jungunt leo, equus, capra, ovis. Multam praedam capiunt, et in unum locum comportant. Tum in quattuor partes praedam dividunt. Leo, autem, "Prima pars," inquit, "mea est; nam leo rex animalium est. Et mea est pars secunda, propter magnos meos labores. Tertiam partem vindico, quoniam major mihi quam vobis, animalibus imbecillis et parvis, fames est. Quartam, denique, partem si quis sibi arrogat, mihi inimicus erit."

## SECTION 17.

## THIRD DECLENSION: ENDINGS OF NEUTER NOUNS.

Neuter nouns of the third declension have the same endings as other nouns, except that, like all neuter nouns, the nominative and accusative in both numbers are the same, and that these cases in the plural end in *-a*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Nomen	nomina.
Acc.	Nomen	nomina.
Gen.	Nominis	nominum.
Dat.	Nomini	nominibus.
Abl.	Nomine	nominibus.

## (59.)

1. Nomen amici mei Alexander est.
2. I'ater et mater pueris nomina dant.
3. Poeta reginac pulchrum carmen dat.
4. Marcus caput parvum, animum magnum habet.
5. Pulchra poetae carmina saepe laudantur.
6. Clarum tuum est nomen, Alexander!
7. Matres parva puerorum capita vident.
8. Senes tempora antiqua semper laudant.
9. Nomina librorum tuorum amico meo non sunt nota.
10. Parvum est pueri caput.

## (60.)

1. Marcus praises the poet's songs.
2. Old men praise the times of their ancestors.
3. The girls adorn the queen's head with roses.
4. The girls see the heads of the old men.
5. The heads of the girls are beautiful.
6. The poet's songs are celebrated.
7. The old man blames the times.
8. The boys see your head.
9. The soldiers see the heads of the enemy.
10. The names of the slaves are known to the lords.

## (61.)

1. Roma caput Italiae est.
2. Marcus latas fagos, Balbus altas populos laudat.

3. Nomina poetarum et oratorum magistro nota sunt.
4. Poeta reginam pulchro carmine laudat.
5. Patres boni pueris et puellis vinum nunquam dant.
6. Puer librum plenum carminum habet.
7. Puer puellae Rosam nomen dat.
8. Orator antiqua tempora multis verbis laudat.
9. Marci longum, Balbi latum, caput est.
10. Poetae a te, oratores a me, laudantur.
11. Nomina amicorum meorum Marco non sunt nota.
12. Poeta tempora antiqua longo carmine laudat.

## (62.)

1. The names of the celebrated poets are known to the citizens.
2. Your name is not known to my mother.
3. The poet praises the queen *in* a beautiful song.
4. The boy has a book full of songs.
5. Marcus's head is long, Balbus's head is broad.
6. The royal sailors see the ships of the enemy in time.
7. The poets praise the queen's beautiful songs.
8. The names of the slaves are known to the merchants.
9. The orator praises a part of the poet's song.
10. The young man gives money to the merchant in time.
11. The king                  satisfied with the songs of the royal [ ]
12. The orator praises the diligence of ancient times.

## SECTION 18.

THIRD DECLENSION : NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS—(*Continued*).

Neuter nouns ending in *-e*, *-al*, or *-ar*, make the ablative singular in *-i*, the nominative plural in *-ia*, and the genitive plural in *-ium* :—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Animal	animalia.
Acc.	Animal	animalia.
Gen.	Animālis	animalium.
Dat.	Animali	animalibus.
Abl.	Animali	animalibus.

(63.)

1. Cives hostibus magna vectigalia pendunt.
2. Servum in conclavi tuo cotidie videt.
3. Equi calcaribus incitantur.
4. Parva animalia saepe impigra, magna pigra sunt.
5. Cives regi magnum numerum vectigalium pendunt.
6. Praemia saepe calcaria diligentiae sunt.
7. Rosac in horto, libri in conclavi tuo, sunt.
8. Parva animalia magna saepe capita habent.
9. In conclavi tuo multi et boni libri sunt.
10. Equos calcaribus, milites praemiis, incitant.
11. Servi libros tuos in sororis tuae conclavi vident.
12. Cives animos militum clamoribus incitant.
13. Marcus mercatori magnam pecuniam pendit.

14. Libri boni puerorum animos saepe incitant.
15. Servi partem regiorum conclave vident.

(64.)

1. The enemy pay taxes to the king.
2. The citizens pay part of the taxes to the queen.
3. Small animals are often active.
4. He praises the diligence of the small animals.
5. The girls adorn the queen's rooms with roses.
6. There are many books in your room.
7. The enemy urge on their horses with the spur.
8. The poet urges on the soldiers with his songs.
9. The father gives a horse to the good boy.
10. Your room is full of books.
11. The king is satisfied with a small tax.
12. Balbus urges on my horse with the spur.
13. The rooms of the king are high.
14. The words of the master urge on the lazy boys.
15. The queen has a large number of rooms.

## SECTION 19.

### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES

(65.)

1. Rex clarae cives Corinthi laudat.
2. Pueri libros sororum magna diligentia legunt.
3. Dominus servis pecuniam interdum pendit.
4. Pueri caput sororis corona florum ornant.

5. Conclavia nostra libris ornantur.
6. Rex coronam in capite habet.
7. Fratres capita sororum floribus ornant.
8. Fagus nominum plena est.
9. Sorores libros fratrum cotidie legunt.
10. Soror mea libros clarorum oratorum cotidie legit.
11. Conclavia regum semper magna sunt.
12. Magnae hostium copiae agros et hortos regios vastant.
13. Capita parvorum animalium interdum magna sunt.
14. Puella magnum carminum numerum legit.
15. Orator multis verbis claros civium majores laudat.

## (66.)

1. My father is an old man.
2. The prows of the ships are seen by the slaves.
3. The slaves see a large number of heads.
4. The boy's father blames the unhappy master.
5. My father's head is long and broad.
6. The taxes of the kings are often great.
7. The common people see the king and queen in the garden.
8. The royal slaves adorn their lord's rooms every day.
9. The king's rooms are full of soldiers and sailors.
10. The enemy always urge on their horses with their spurs.
11. The young man loves the songs of old times.
12. The citizens love the king and queen, and always praise them.
13. The names of the young men are not known to the old man.

14. My friends praise the rewards of their fathers and mothers.
15. The queen praises part of the women, part she blames.

(67.)

1. Juvenes animos servorum magnis clamoribus terrent.
2. Mercatores semper impigri sunt, pigri nunquam.
3. Majorum nostrorum tempora senex cotidie laudat.
4. Juvenes nostra, senes antiqua, tempora laudant.
5. Horti regis semper florum pleni sunt.
6. Servorum pars floribus mensam domini ornat.
7. Puer epistulam patris, puella matris, legit.
8. Hostes agros et hortos civium nostrorum vastant.
9. Servi caput regis corona ornant.
10. Animi militum non semper sunt contenti.
11. Orator diligentiam militum nostrorum multis verbis laudat.
12. Puer parvum conclave, puella magnum, habet.
13. Hostes magna vectigalia regi nostro pendunt.
14. Magnae hostium copiae animum regiae nostrae terrent.
15. Magister libros pueris dat, et diligentiam culpat.

(68.)

1. The celebrated Corinth is praised by the royal poet.
2. The king often reads the books of the orators.
3. My rooms are high and broad.

4. The sailors often adorn the prows of their ships with flowers.
5. The soldiers urge on their horses with their spurs.
6. The boys read their books with great diligence.
7. *Your* father praises you, *my* friend, *my* mother me.
8. The king gives part of the taxes to the queen.
9. The soldiers' horses frighten the lazy common people.
10. The king, a good man, praises the unhappy girl.
11. The celebrated poets are satisfied with the royal rewards.
12. The words of the orator urge on the minds of the citizens.
13. Our king is not satisfied with the diligence of the merchants.
14. The old man praises the wars of our ancestors.
15. The words of the poet urge on the hearts of our soldiers.

(69.)

1. Fagi latae in horto regis, populi altae in reginae, sunt.
2. Juvenis pulchra poetae nostri carmina cotidie legit.
3. Orator multis verbis claros civium majores laudat.
4. Horti regii pleni pulchrorum florum sunt.
5. Poeta claram Corinthum carminibus saepe laudat.
6. Nomina vectigalium nostrorum regi non sunt nota.
7. Conclavium partem laudat, partem culpat, rex noster.
8. Antiqua tempora senibus semper grata sunt.

9. Nomina puerorum et puellarum magistro nota sunt.
10. Mercator domino dat vinum, mercatori dominus pecuniam pendit.

(70.)

1. The forces of the enemy lay waste our land with great shouts.
2. The enemy sees the high prows of the ships.
3. The lord sometimes gives his faithful slave a large sum of money.
4. The old man blames our times, old times he praises.
5. Part of the crowd (*vulgaris*) frightens the unhappy queen with their shouts.
6. The letter of a mother often urges on a lazy boy.
7. In the royal room the tables are full of books.
8. The merchant gives wine to the king, the taxes he does not pay.
9. My friend often praises your friend, he never blames *him*.

## V.

### Coriolanus.

(*The words will be found in the Latin-English Dictionary.*)

Coriolanus, clarus Romanorum imperator, plebi Romanae ob superbiam invitus fuit. Ex urbe igitur expulsus, ad Volscos, acerrimos Romanorum hostes, contendit. Ab Volscis dux exercitus factus, copias Romanas saepe vincit. Denique ad urbem summis Volscorum copiis venit. Frus-

tra legati ex urbe veniunt, pacemque implorant. Postremo, Veturia, mater, et Volumnia, uxor, ex urbe veniunt; et, lacrimis precibusque mulierum conmotus, exercitum removet. Ab Volscis, autem, ut proditor interficitur.

## SECTION 20.

### THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER OF NOUNS BY TERMINATION.

#### *Masculine.*

General rule:—Nouns which end in *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*, *es* (when the other cases of nouns in *-es* have more syllables than the nominative singular), are masculine.

—O.

Decline:—

Sermo facetus.<sup>1</sup>  
Witty conversation.

(71.)

1. Sermones faceti senem delectant.
2. Nauta praedoni maritimo pecuniam dat.
3. Sermo Marci facetus puellam delectat.
4. Rex praedonum equum calcaribus incitat.
5. Carmina poetac multos homines delectant.
6. Orator facetus cives delectat.
7. Nomina praedonum regi nota sunt.

<sup>1</sup> For the genitive of the noun, and the quantity of the words, see the Vocabulary.

8. Conclave magistri librorum plenum est.
9. Pueri libros faceti Ciceronis interdum legunt.
10. Praedones maritimi proras navium floribus ornant.
11. Magister Ciceronem, oratorem facetum, cotidie laudat.
12. Verba faceti Ciceronis vulgus delectant.

(72.)

1. Witty conversation always charms (*delectat*) the king.
2. Long conversations often charm old men.
3. Many men praise their ancestors.
4. The witty orator is praised by the king.
5. The slaves see the ships of many brigands.
6. Many brigands lay waste our lands.
7. Old men love long conversations.
8. The pirates frighten our sailors.
9. The boy sometimes reads the books of the witty orator.
10. The old man praises the old orators and poets.

## SECTION 21.

### THIRD DECLENSION : MASCULINE NOUNS—(*Continued*).

-or.

Decline :—

Magnus clamor.

A loud shout.

## (73.)

1. Magni civium clamores mercatores terrent.
2. Praedonum pars agros, pars hortos, vastat.
3. Varii florum colores a puella laudantur.
4. Multi viatores regis nostri diligentiam laudant.
5. Vulgus regem et reginam magno clamore terret.
6. Clamores praedonum nautarum animos nunquam terrent.
7. Puellae pulchrum rosae colorem laudant.
8. Viator hortos regios et pulchros florum colores saepe laudat.
9. Viatorem non hostes, non praedones, terrent.
10. Multi homines militum animos laudant.

## (74.)

1. The colours of flowers are various.
2. The colours of your flowers are beautiful.
3. Your shouts, boy, do not frighten me.
4. The common people love (sing.) the witty orator.
5. *They* have many flowers of various colours.
6. The merchant praises the colour of the wine.
7. The active merchant is praised by the brigands.
8. *He* praises the various and beautiful colours of the flowers.
9. The shouts of the enemy do not frighten the soldiers.
10. The shouts of the brigands do not frighten the mind of the traveller.

## SECTION 22

THIRD DECLENSION: MASCULINE RULE—(*Continued*).

-OS.

Decline:—

Mos antiquus.

The ancient custom.

(75.)

1. Viator pulchros hortorum regiorum flores laudat.
2. Senex mores antiquos et tempora antiqua laudat.
3. Mali mores pigri pueri a magistro culpantur.
4. Flores varios viatores in hortis regiis vident.
5. Senes malos nostrorum temporum mores culpant.
6. Viator malos civium nostrorum mores culpat.
7. Clamores vulgi regios custodes non terrent.
8. Rex custodibus conclave regiorum magnam pecuniam pendit.
9. Rex praedonum animos multis et facetis verbis incitat.
10. Custodes hortorum multos flores puellis dant.

(76.)

1. Their fathers praise the good manners of the boys.
2. The ancient custom is praised by old men.
3. The king praises the faithful keepers of the gardens.
4. My brother has our flowers.

5. The beautiful flowers charm the mind of the queen.
6. The lord blames the lazy keepers of the gardens.
7. The poet charms the king with his varied conversation.
8. Ancient customs are praised by old men.
9. Many men see the active traveller.
10. The king praises the good manners of our ancestors.

### SECTION 23.

THIRD DECLENSION : MASCULINE RULE—(*Continued*).

-er.

Decline :—

Altus agger.  
The high rampart.

(77.)

1. Milites nostri alto aggere castra circumdant.
2. Aggerem magnum castrorum nostrorum laudat.
3. Viator impiger hortos regios imbre magno videt.
4. Mulieres regem magnis clamoribus terrent.
5. Pater tuus malos fratris mei mores saepe culpat.
6. Milites nostri castra hostium magnis copiis circumdant.
7. Rex castra praedonum longo aggere circumdat.
8. Rex hostium castra aggere longo et lato circumdat.
9. Imber magnus custodes hortorum terret.
10. Magnae hostium copiae, magno imbre, castra alto aggere circumdant.

(78.)

1. The traveller sees the high rampart of the camp.
2. The heavy showers frighten the girls.
3. The enemy surround the camp with a high rampart.
4. The rampart of the camp is great and high.
5. The merchant pays a great sum of money to your brother.
6. There are many merchants in the camp of the enemy.
7. The high rampart frightens the minds of our citizens.
8. There are high poplars in the royal gardens.
9. The number of celebrated orators is small.
10. The heavy shower does not frighten the active traveller.

## SECTION 24.

THIRD DECLENSION : MASCULINE RULE—(*Continued*).  
 -es (Increasing).

Decline :—

Pes claudus.  
 The lame foot.

(79.)

1. Equites Romani magnis copiis agros hostium vastant.

2. Milites Romani castra alto aggere semper circumdant.
3. Hortus amici mei ducentos pedes longus est.
4. Puer magnos et longos pedes habet.
5. Regina hostium longo bello fessa est.
6. Milites, more majorum, castra alto aggere circumdant.
7. Castra Romana magnis hostium copiis circumdantur.
8. Milites Romani longo bello fessi sunt.
9. Soror nostra ab equite Romano, amico meo, amatatur.
10. Poeta varios florum colores amat, et hortum nostrum saepe laudat.

(80.)

1. Balbus has a lame foot.
2. The girl is lame *in* the feet.
3. The active soldiers urge on their horses with their spurs.
4. The king's room is two hundred feet (accusative) long.
5. The king praised the diligence of the active soldiers.
6. The horsemen of the enemy urge on their horses with their spurs.
7. The king's horse has a lame foot.
8. The boy has a small head, *and* large feet.
9. The pirate frightens the tired traveller.
10. The shouts of the sailors often frighten the little boys.

## SECTION 25.

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE MASCULINE RULE.

(81.)

1. Juveni misero pes claudus est.
2. Rex impigro equiti magnam pecuniam dat.
3. Mercator bonus fesso viatori vinum dat.
4. Amicus meus hortum ducentos pedes latum habet.
5. Castra hostium longo aggere semper circumdantur.
6. Viator impiger Corinthum magno imbre videt.
7. Mali tui, puer, mores magistro noti sunt !
8. Dominus fido hortorum custodi magnum praemium dat.
9. Pulchri saepe sunt florum nostrorum colores.
10. Mores puerorum saepe varii sunt.
11. Germani castra Romana magnis copiis circumdant.
12. Servi longas domini mensas variis floribus ornant.

(82.)

1. The active brigands surround the Roman horsemen with their forces.
2. Good men praise good manners.
3. Cicero's witty conversation is praised by his friends.
4. The number of sea animals is great.
5. The king of the enemy always has a big crown on (*in*) his head.
6. The keeper of the gardens gives two hundred flowers to the girl.

7. Our mother always reads our letters.
8. Marcus sees the prows of the enemy's ships.
9. The enemy pay taxes to the Romans.
10. The keepers of the king's rooms are tired.

## (83.)

1. Balbus me, fidum amicum, interdum culpat.
2. Romani, more majorum, agros hostium vastant.
3. Mercator pecuniam, miles bellum, poeta carmina, amat.
4. Dominus servis vinum nunquam dat.
5. Clari sunt multi oratores Romani.
6. Rex a militibus, regina a civibus, amatur.
7. Magni mulierum clamores milites Romanos non terrent.
8. Pigrum vulgus Romanum milites culpat.
9. Pueri cotidie libros Ciceronis legunt.
10. Hostes lata Romanorum castra cotidie laudant.
11. Poetarum pars fagum latum, pars altam populum, laudat.
12. Horti nostri florum variorum pleni sunt.
13. Vinum fesso militi gratum semper est.
14. Puer piger miser est; impigri non sunt miseri.
15. Rex, vir bonus, militibus praemia dat.

## (84.)

1. Cicero's witty letters delight our master.
2. The lord sometimes urges on his horse with the spur.

3. Our times are praised by the poet, and blamed by the orator.
4. The names of the citizens are known to the king.
5. The girl is tired with the long songs of the poet.
6. The girls surround the head of our queen with flowers.
7. The orator praises the good manners of the old man.
8. The words of the orator do not frighten the minds of the enemy.
9. My father gives a large number of letters to my mother.
10. A part of the garden is full (fem.) of beautiful flowers.
11. The pirates lay waste the lands of our citizens.
12. My brother loves your beautiful sister.
13. The poet is satisfied with the manners of our times.
14. Little animals have sometimes big feet.
15. Horses charm me, flowers you.

## VI.

The Punishments of Ixion, Sisyphus, and Tantalus.

(*Words in the Latin-English Dictionary.*)

Terribiles poenas pendunt (sic enim antiqui narrant)  
Ixion, Sisyphus, Tantalus.

Ixion, autem, ad rotam ferventem alligatus, semper in caelo volvitur.

Sisyphus, omne tempus ingens saxum adverso colle  
trudit, Quoties. autem, summum jam collem attingere

videtur, subito ad imum devolvitur. Iterum iterumque summus ille labor renovatur.

Tantalus, in aqua collocatus, semper sitit. Nam quoties haustum aquae sumere vult, aqua recedit. Tum etiam poma super capite pendent: sed quoties manum porrigit, rami, vento moti, recedunt. Saxum etiam (ut alii narrant) capiti impendet: saxy ruinam timens, perpetuo metu eruciatur.

## SECTION 26.

### THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER—(*Continued*).

#### Exceptions to Masculine Rule.

Nouns that end in *-do*, *-go*, and *-io*, are feminine; *ordo*, however, and, of course, *praedo*, are masculine.

(85.)

1. Magna praedonum multitudine castra, ducentos pedes longa, circumdantur.
2. Pulchra imago Ciceronis, oratoris Romani, conclave meum ornat.
3. Copiae hostium longo ordine agros nostros vastant.
4. Multi homines longa regis oratione delectantur.
5. Scipio magnis copiis agros hostium vastat.
6. Magna navium multitudo a nautis nostris videtur.
7. Multae majorum, hominum clarorum, imagines conclavia regis ornant.
8. Parvae nostrorum copiae magnam hostium multitudinem superant.

9. *Imago tua me et amicum meum semper delectat.*
10. *Multi flores longis ordinibus hortos nostros ornant.*

(86.)

1. The orations of Cicero are known to the master.
2. A great multitude of the enemy is in the Roman camp.
3. In our rooms there are many images of our ancestors.
4. There are many rows of flowers in our garden.
5. Our forces overcome a great multitude of the enemy.
6. The forces of the enemy throw the long ranks of the soldiers into confusion.
7. The slaves give the beautiful likeness of the queen to the king.
8. The enemy throw the Roman ranks into confusion.
9. The beautiful images of his ancestors delight the old man.
10. Many likenesses of the old poets adorn the rooms of the old man.

## SECTION 27.

THIRD DECLENSION: EXCEPTIONS TO MASCULINE RULE—  
*(Continued).*

Exceptions to *-or* and *-os* being masculine.

## (87.)

1. Clamores civium militum corda non terrent.
2. Arbores densae magnis imbribus viatori gratae sunt.
3. Os oratoris faceti civibus notum est.
4. Ossa multorum viatorum servi in silvis vident.
5. Cives cor viatoris variis clamoribus terrent.
6. Silvae arboribus densae puellae animum terrent.
7. Diligentia reginae semper in ore vulgi est.
8. Magna hostium multitudo corda nostrorum militum terret.
9. Denisi arborum ordines in horto regis sunt.
10. Magnus variarum arborum numerus in hortis regiis est.

## (88.)

1. Beech-trees and poplars are beautiful trees.
2. The enemy do not frighten the hearts of the soldiers.
3. The lands of the citizens are full of the bones of the enemy.
4. The poet sees the beautiful faces of the girls.
5. The trees are thick in the garden.
6. The poet praises the beautiful face of your sister.
7. The bones of many animals are in the woods.
8. Many trees surround the garden with their dense rows.
9. The orator urges on the hearts of the citizens by a long speech.
10. The faces of the king and queen are known to the common people.

## SECTION 28.

THIRD DECLENSION: EXCEPTIONS TO MASCULINE  
RULE—(*Continued*).

Exceptions to *-er* being masculine.

(89.)

1. Primo vere hostes castra Romana magnis copiis circumdant.
2. Poetae ver aiant, et semper carminibus laudant.
3. Dominus, longo itinere fessus, fidos servos culpat.
4. Milites nostri longum iter faciunt: nunquam sunt fessi.
5. Clamores vulgi reginam nunquam terrent.
6. Vere primo horti nostri florum pleni sunt.
7. Milites nostri, longo itinere fessi, ab hostibus superantur.
8. Ver pueris et puellis semper gratum est.
9. Mulieres bonae fassis viatoribus semper vinum dant.
10. Vere primo milites nostri castra in agris hostium faciunt.

(90.)

1. The traveller is making a long journey.
2. Merchants often make long journeys.
3. Many poets praise spring in their songs.
4. In spring my garden is full of little flowers.
5. The merchant makes a great number of journeys.

6. The boy is reading the first chapter (*caput*) of the book.
7. The first rank of the cavalry overcomes the enemy.
8. The soldiers are tired with their long march.
9. The spring is beautiful with *its* various flowers.
10. The soldiers march *in* early spring.

## SECTION 29.

### THIRD DECLENSION : EXCEPTIONS TO MASCULINE RULE—(*Continued*).

Exceptions to *-es* (increasing) being masculine.

(91.)

1. Poeta carmina aliena nunquam laudat.
2. Mercatores impigri in aes alienum non incidunt.
3. Clara poetae carmina in ore vulgi semper sunt.
4. Quies puellae grata, puero molesta, saepe est.
5. Longi sermones seni interdum molesti sunt.
6. Hostes, longa quiete fessi, bellum faciunt.
7. Juvenes saepe in aes alienum incidunt, et a patri-  
bus culpantur.
8. Militibus, longo itinere fessis, quies grata est.
9. Imbres magni interdum segeti nostrae molesti sunt.
10. Poeta oratorem, hominem molestum, saepe culpat.

(92.)

1. The traveller sees many crops in the fields.
2. Rest is sometimes welcome to the active slave.

3. The cavalry of the enemy lay waste our crops.
4. The young man often falls into debt.
5. The merchant is satisfied with the crops.
6. The active boys love a long rest.
7. Debt is troublesome to the citizens.
8. The thick trees are sometimes troublesome to the crop.
9. A long rest is sometimes troublesome to the active horseman.
10. Heavy showers are not always troublesome for the crops.

## SECTION 30.

### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE MASCULINE RULE AND ITS EXCEPTIONS.

(93.)

1. Multi homines longam regis nostri orationem laudant.
2. Cives reginae pulchrum os semper laudant.
3. Magister claros Romae oratores saepe laudat.
4. Milites nostri alto aggere castra semper circumdant.
5. Imbres custodibus hortorum saepe grati sunt.
6. Viatoribus, longo itinere fassis, puer bonus vimum dat.
7. Pueri magnos, puellae parvos, pedes habent.
8. Parva animalia saepe segetibus molesta sunt.

9. Silva ducentos pedes lata est.
10. Primo vere hortus meus me semper delectat.

## (94.)

1. Your mother is delighted with your witty talk.
2. The thick woods frighten the heart of the traveller.
3. Your sisters often read my books.
4. In a heavy shower our rooms are welcome.
5. The traveller is lame in the feet.
6. Lazy merchants often fall into debt.
7. The women adorn the queen with many a flower.
8. The showers are often welcome to the flowers.
9. The keepers of the royal gardens are never tired.
10. The names of our ancestors are not always known.

## (95.)

1. Magna hominum multitudo Ciceronem magnis clamoribus laudat.
2. Flores pulchri in horto, arbores densae in silva, sunt.
3. Nautae proras navium variis coloribus ornant.
4. Rex, more antiquo, coronam semper in capite habet.
5. Viator latus nostri horti arbores saepe laudat.
6. Magnae majorum imagines conclave senis longis ordinibus ornant.
7. Primo vere naves hostium longo ordine videntur.
8. Milites longum iter faciunt, et hostes in silva vident.
9. Equites nostri magnum hostium numerum in silvis superant.
10. Rex noster milites longa oratione incitat.

11. Hostes impigri nostras copias saepe superant.
12. Cives fidi regi vectigalia semper pendunt.
13. Juvenes boni patrem et matrem semper amant.
14. Senex miser pedibus interdum claudus est.

(96.)

1. The boy's feet are tired with the long journey.
2. The fields are full of many crops.
3. The boy sees the bones of a great animal in the wood.
4. Scipio always surrounds the camp with a high rampart.
5. A great multitude of brigands throws our ranks into confusion.
6. The various colours of the flowers charm the girl.
7. The merchant, unhappy man, falls into debt.
8. The king's oration urges on the minds of the soldiers.
9. The Roman soldiers, tired with their long rest, lay waste the lands of the enemy.
10. The king overcomes the pirates.
11. The enemy never pay taxes to our king.
12. The citizens *are* often, the soldiers *are* never, lazy.
13. The active young man urges on his horse with the spurs.
14. Old men are often tired with a long journey.

## VII.

### Theseus and Ariadne.

In Creta insula magnum labyrinthum Daedalus aedificavit, plenum viarum flexuosarum. In medio labyrintho

foedum monstrum, taurus partim, partim homo, habitabat. Monstrum, autem, rex Cretae, saevus homo, captivis saginabat. Inter miserandas illas victimas quondam erat Theseus, regulus Atticus. Ariadne, tamen, filia regis, plena misericordiae et amoris, juveni filum longum mirum-que gladium dat. Intrat, igitur, labyrinthum, filum-que ad portam alligat. Itaque juvenis auxilio fili certam viam in vasti aedificii flexuris servat. Tum gladio monstrum feliciter necat. Nec longa mora fuit. Theseus cum filia regis navi trans latum mare fugit. Vespere, autem, ad Naxum insulam veniunt. Media, tamen, nocte Theseus, ingratus juvenis, puellam fidam et amantem deserit; solus-que ad patriam reddit.

### SECTION 31.

#### THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER—(*Continued*).

#### FEMININE RULE.

Those nouns in the third declension are feminine which end in *is*, *as*, *aus*, *x*, *s* (following another consonant), *es* (not increasing).

-is.

Decline:—

Navis longa.

The long ship (or war-ship).

(97.)

1. Multae classes civium Romanorum sunt.
2. Reginae semper pulchras vestes habent.

3. Rex fidiae reginae pulchram vestem dat.
4. Classis Romana ducentas naves habet.
5. Puellae saepe coloribus vestium delectantur.
6. Longae puellarum vestes juvenem non delectant.
7. Naves longae classem Carthaginiensium superant.
8. Varii colores vestium animum reginae delectant.
9. Cives naves longas hostium longo ordine vident.
10. Parvus puer vestem variorum colorum habet.

## (98.)

1. The war-ship frightens the pirates.
2. The enemy's war-ships are not seen (*videntur*) by the citizens.
3. The great fleet of the enemy frightens our sailors.
4. The brother praises his sister's beautiful dress.
5. Your dress is in my room.
6. Many young men never fall into debt.
7. The boys of the first class read the Roman orators.
8. The queen often gives dresses to the women.
9. The king of the pirates is frightened by the war-ships.
10. The Carthaginians overcome the Roman fleet.

## SECTION 32.

THIRD DECLENSION: FEMININE RULE—(*Continued*).-is—(*Continued*).

(99.)

1. Multae aves in silvis vere primo canunt.
2. Largae in agris nostris messes sunt.
3. Puer magnas aures, parvum caput, habet.
4. Varii avium colores animum puellae delectant.
5. Puer miser dextra aure surdus, sinistro pede claudus, est.
6. Clamores surdo seni non sunt molesti.
7. Magna parvarum avium multitudo in silvis semper canit.
8. Clamores puerorum auribus patris molesti sunt.
9. Soror sinistra, puer dextra, aure surdus est.
10. Avibus longa itinera non sunt molesta.

(100.)

1. Many birds are singing on the trees.
2. The enemy's cavalry lay waste our harvest.
3. The old man is deaf *in* the left ear.
4. The abundant harvests delight the merchant.
5. Little birds often have big heads.
6. The girls praise the queen's beautiful dress.
7. Little animals often have big ears.

8. The names of many birds are known to the boy.
9. The girl has small and beautiful ears.
10. The enemy throws into confusion the left ranks of the soldiers.

### SECTION 33.

#### THIRD DECLENSION : FEMININE RULE—(*Continued*).

-as. aus.

Decline :—

1. Magna civitas.  
A great state.
2. Summa laus.  
The highest praise

(101.)

1. Multae et magnae civitates regi nostro vectigalia pendunt.
2. Multae praedonum naves civitates maritimas terrent.
3. Pueri magna est diligentia, summa honestas.
4. Frater amicum, summae honestatis virum, saepe laudat.
5. Laus regis fessorum militum animos delectat.
6. Laudes tuae, magister, impigrum puerum delectant!
7. Rex copias civitatum maritimorum superat.
8. Custodes hortorum summa diligentia et honestate sunt (are of).

9. Prima aestate magnae hostium copiae agros nostros vastant.
10. Longae hostium naves a nautis nostris saepe videntur.
11. Viatores impigri multas civitates, multos homines, vident.
12. Aestate summa milites, quiete fessi, longum iter faciunt.
13. Summa aestate magna avium multitudo in silvis semper canit.
14. Multae civitates magnis copiis bellum Romanis (*dat.*) faciunt.
15. Summa aestate pulchri sunt in horto regio varii florum colores.

## (102.)

1. Many states are making war.
2. The king overcomes the forces of many states.
3. The honesty of the slaves is known to their lord.
4. The lord praises the extreme honesty of the slaves.
5. The summer is welcome to boys and girls.
6. Praise is always welcome to men.
7. The traveller makes a long journey in the height of summer.
8. Many states are surrounding the Roman camp with large forces.
9. The extreme honesty of my slaves charms me.
10. Abundant harvests always adorn our fields.

## SECTION 34.

THIRD DECLENSION : FEMININE RULE—(*Continued*).

-x.

Decline :—

Clara vox.

The clear voice.

(103.)

1. Leges severae civitatis nostrae ab oratore laudantur.
2. Obscura nocte magna hostium multitudo castra  
Romana magnis copiis circumdat.
3. Rex clara voce summae custodum diligentiam  
laudat.
4. Mercatorum parti bellum, pax parti grata est.
5. Leges severae viris bonis non sunt molestiae.
6. Faceta vox Ciceronis, boni viri et summi oratoris,  
senes delectat.
7. Summa aestate noctes interdum clarae sunt.
8. Senes, more majorum, multas et bonas leges civi-  
tati faciunt.
9. Milites, longa pace fessi, bellum hostibus faciunt.
10. Clara oratoris vox aures vulgi delectat.

(104.)

1. A long peace is not welcome to active soldiers.
2. Old men praise the ancient laws.
3. The voice of the orator is known to the citizens.

4. Night is welcome to the brigands.
5. The marches of the king are known to the enemy.
6. The brigands like (*amant*) a dark night.
7. The queen praises the orator's clear voice.
8. Severe laws frighten many men.
9. The citizens like the long peace.
10. The abundant harvests delight the minds of the citizens.

### SECTION 35.

THIRD DECLENSION : FEMININE RULE—(*Continued*).

-s, preceded by a consonant.

Decline :—

Magna pars.

A large part.

(105.)

1. Magnae copiae hostium urbem nostram primo vere terrent.
2. Viatores impigri multas urbes, multas gentes, vident.
3. Urbs nostra, bello fessa, magna vectigalia pendit.
4. Magna militum pars nocte obscura iter facit.
5. Orator oratione longa honestam militum mortem laudat.
6. Rex magnam hostium multitudinem nunquam timet.
7. Copiae multarum gentium agros hostium vastant.

8. Magna pars urbium regi nostro vectigalia semper pendit.
9. Multae et magnae gentes bellum Romanis faciunt.
10. Pars civium summa regis honestatem multis verbis laudat.
11. Orator mores urbium Carthaginiensium non laudat.
12. Equites nostri magnam partem copiarum regiarum in silvis vident.
13. Corinthus, pulchra urbs Graeciae, a poetis laudatur.
14. Magna pars oratorum regem et reginam semper culpat.
15. Graecia magnum pulchrarum urbium numerum habet.

(106.)

1. A large part of the citizens blames the orator.
2. The enemy lay waste the fields of our cities.
3. The soldiers do not fear an honourable death.
4. The royal gardens adorn our city.
5. Many tribes have kings.
6. Death is sometimes welcome to unhappy men.
7. The old man's clear voice is known to the citizens.
8. To a large part of mankind (*hominum*) death is not welcome.
9. The king often makes war on many tribes (dative).
10. The names of many nations are known to the boys.

## SECTION 36.

THIRD DECLENSION : FEMININE RULE—(*Continued*).

-es, not increasing.

Decline :—

Nigra nubes.  
A black cloud.

(107.)

1. Milites equos incitant, et magnam hostium caedem faciunt.
2. Milites nostri, longo fessi itinere, magnam cladem accipiunt.
3. Nautae magnas et nigras nubes timent.
4. Nautae navium, librorum magistro nomina nota sunt.
5. Galli magnum cladium numerum accipiunt.
6. Equites nostri magnam Gallorum caedem saepe faciunt.
7. Naves nostrae multis urbibus et multis gentibus notae sunt.
8. Hostes magnam caedem nostrorum equitum faciunt.
9. Viator, longo itinere fessus, sinistro pede claudus est.
- 10 Denosthēnes, clarus Graeciae orator, animos civium saepe incitat.

(108.)

1. The black cloud frightens the sailor.
2. The Romans receive a great defeat.

3. Our soldiers make a great slaughter of the enemy.
4. The Roman cavalry overcome the forces of the enemy.
5. Black clouds frighten the traveller in the wood.
6. The Romans receive a great number of defeats.
7. The great slaughterers frighten our citizens.
8. The enemy's war-ships are two hundred feet (accusative) long.
9. Our king gives the enemy's lands to his cavalry.
10. The great slaughter of the soldiers frightens the minds of the citizens.

## SECTION 37.

### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE FEMININE RULE.

(109.)

1. *Regina bona puellae pulchram vestem, puerō multos libros, dat.*
2. *Civitas nostra magnam legum multitudinem habet.*
3. *Rex miser militibus suis magnam cladem timet.*
4. *Quies hominibus impigris saepe molesta est.*
5. *Naves longae hostium civitati nostrae notae sunt.*
6. *Laus pueris et magistris, servis et dominis, grata est.*
7. *Multos homines antiqua carmina majorum nostrorum delectant.*
8. *Florum pulchrorum magnam partem puer inatri dat.*

9. Mercator semper in aes alienum incidit ; vectigalia nunquam pendit.
10. Ora patris et matris reginae civibus nota sunt.

## (110.)

1. Abundant harvests are the rewards of diligence.
2. The king and queen make severe laws for our state.
3. The black clouds frighten the sailors of the royal fleets.
4. The queen gives wine to the king, tired with his long speech.
5. The honourable death of the queen is praised by poets and orators.
6. Our king receives the praises of many nations.
7. The slave is lame *in* the left foot, and deaf *in* the right ear.
8. The diligence and honesty of the old men are praised by the citizens.
9. The showers are not always small *in* summer.
10. Our trees are beautiful *in* the height of summer.

## (111.)

1. Praedones maritimi nautarum, hostes civium, animos terrent.
2. Corda puellarum nox obscura et longum iter terrent.
3. Flores saepe primo vere parvi, summa aestate magni, sunt.
4. Silva magna arborum latarum multitudine densa est.

5. Nigrae nubes noctem militibus obscuram faciunt.
6. Ducenti equites magnas hostium copias superant.
7. Ordines Romani magnam cladem accipiunt.
8. Tempora nostra et mores nostri interdum cul-  
pantur.
9. Poeta parvos pedes, pulchras aures, pulchrum caput  
puellae laudat.
10. Magna avium parvarum multitudo summa aestate  
in densis silvis canit.

## (112.)

1. The colours of the royal robes are praised by the citizens.
2. The orator's witty conversation *charms* me, his long speeches charm you.
3. Little animals have often long names.
4. Many images of my ancestors adorn my rooms.
5. Your sister's beautiful voice delights our ears.
6. The boys read the books of the celebrated orator Cicero every day.
7. The active traveller is delighted with long journeys.
8. The abundant harvests are praised by the king.
9. The names of the active young men are known to the king.
10. The travellers see the bones of many soldiers in the wood.

## VIII.

## A Surprise.

Bello Aegyptio, dum milites nostri castra faciunt, intenti-que opere sunt, subito speculatores accurrunt. "Adeunt hostes," clamant. Et statim ex arbustis undique hostes exsurgunt, et multis saevis-que clamoribus in castra irruunt. Nostri confestim arma arripiunt. Pauci extra castra orbes faciunt; ceteri ex vallo tela conjiciunt. Nostri multos amittunt: tandem hostes victi recedunt. Tum horribile spectaculum circa castra nostra erat. Corpora hominum, camelorum, equorum mixta jacent. Inveniuntur, etiam, inter mortuos seminae puerique parvi. Nostri, tamen, quamquam acri proelio fessi sunt, castra conficiunt. Neque nocturno tempore gemitus hostium vulneratorum militibus facultatem quietis dat.

## SECTION 38.

THIRD DECLENSION: EXCEPTIONS TO THE  
FEMININE RULE.

Exceptions to *-is* being feminine.

(113.)

1. Nostri magnis copiis mense Januario castra hostium circumdant.
2. Civitas nostra magnos et latos fines habet.

3. Milites largas messes in finibus Carthaginiensium vastant.
4. In summo colle copiae hostium a nostris videntur.
5. In hostium finibus ardui sunt colles, densae silvae.
6. Civis magnam classem navium longarum timent.
7. Menses aestivi impigris viatoribus grati sunt.
8. Marco magnae sunt aures, Alexandro parvae.
9. Civis magnis clamoribus verba oratoris accipiunt.
10. Multi et ardui colles viatori, longo itinere fesso, molesti sunt.

(114.)

1. The boys love the summer months.
2. Caesar lays waste the broad territories of the enemy.
3. The steep hill is troublesome to the tired soldiers.
4. The war-ships of the enemy frighten the maritime cities.
5. The steep hills are troublesome to the soldiers.
6. Caesar is making war in the territory of the Gauls.
7. The merchant gives beautiful dresses to his mother and sister.
8. The brigands lay waste our territories.
9. Our citizens praise the king's big ships.
10. Our forces receive a great defeat in the month of January.

## SECTION 39.

THIRD DECLENSION : EXCEPTIONS TO -IS BEING FEMININE  
—(*Continued*).

(115.)

1. Magnus ignis, hostibus nostris gratus, naves nostras urit.
2. Magna hostium urbs magno igne uritur.
3. Equites hostium cives ensibus vulnerant.
4. Flores parvi pulchros puellae crines ornant.
5. Servi crines senis longos corona ornant.
6. Ignis interdum aestivis mensibus gratus est.
7. Floribus pulchri reginae crines a servis ornantur.
8. Pulchra poetae nostri carmina cotidie legunt, cotidie laudant.
9. Dominus aurem servi sinistram acuto ense vulnerat.
10. Mense Januario praedones magna classe urbes maritimias circumdant.

(116.)

1. The swords of our soldiers are sharp.
2. The old man's hair is long.
3. The horsemen wound their horses with the sharp spur.
4. The king gives a large sword to the active soldier.
5. The colours of many birds are beautiful.
6. A great fire burns the Roman fleet.

7. *In* the summer months the hill is troublesome to travellers.
8. The horseman wounds our king with his sharp sword.
9. The brother decorates his sister's beautiful hair with a rose.
10. The large number of taxes is troublesome to the citizens.

## SECTION 40.

### THIRD DECLENSION: EXCEPTIONS TO -IS BEING FEMININE—(*Continued*).

(117.)

1. *Puella viatori paneum bonum et vinum multum dat.*
2. *Aminis rapidus summa aestate interdum siccus est.*
3. *Ensis meus in rapidum amnem incidit.*
4. *Milites regem magnis clamoribus culpant; panis siccus est.*
5. *Mense Januario regina servis et custodibus multa praemia dat.*
6. *Multus est militibus panis; vinum non habent.*
7. *Mensa panis, florum, vini, plena est.*
8. *Orbis terrarum hominum et animalium, urbium et civitatum plenus est.*
9. *Milites nostri saepe orbes faciunt.*
10. *Orbis terrarum impigris viatoribus notus est.*

## (118.)

1. The traveller is delighted with the good bread and the wine.
2. Our soldiers are not satisfied with dry bread.
3. The rivers *are* rapid, the hills are steep.
4. The river is welcome to the tired traveller.
5. An abundant harvest gives much bread to men.
6. The young man is deaf *in* the left ear.
7. The soldiers get across (*superant*) the rapid river.
8. Corinth is a celebrated city of Greece.
9. The rivers are sometimes dry *in* the summer months
10. The royal fleet frightens the minds of the pirates.

## SECTION 41.

THIRD DECLENSION: EXCEPTIONS TO -IS BEING FEMININE—(*Continued*).

## (119.)

1. Puer lapides magnos semper jacit, et amicos saepe vulnerat.
2. Miles ense acuto vulneratur; multum sanguinem fundit.
3. Milites nostri orbes faciunt, et hostes terrent.
4. Hostes messes nostras igne vastant.
5. Puer miser multum sanguinem cotidie fundit.
6. Corda hominum sanguinis plena sunt.
7. Prorae navium hostium nostros nautas terrent.

8. Ensis hostis sanguine humano ruber est.
9. Regina nostra multum cotidie sanguinem fundit.
10. Mense Januario ignes in conclavibus nostris semper grati sunt.

(120.)

1. The traveller sees human blood in the wood.
2. The slave's dress is red with human blood.
3. The stones are often sharp.
4. The enemy wounds the head of the old man with a sharp stone.
5. The nights are long for the unhappy boys.
6. The great slaughter of the enemy delights the minds of the citizens.
7. The river is red with human blood.
8. The boys often throw big and sharp stones.
9. The maritime states receive a great defeat.
10. The young man wounds his sister's right foot with a sharp stone.

## SECTION 42.

THIRD DECLENSION : EXCEPTIONS TO -IS BEING FEMININE—(*Continued*).

(121.)

1. Pulvis aestate siccus, imbre madidus, est.
2. Crines sororis nostrae pulveris sicci pleni sunt.

3. Multi homines siccis majorum cineres sovent.
4. Puer miser patrem carum ense meo vulnerat.
5. Puer cineres patris mortui fovet.
6. Densa pulveris sicci nubes militibus in itinere molesta est.
7. Hostes castra urunt, et multi in agris cineres videntur.
8. Rex magno civium numero carus est.
9. Custodes in horto sanguinem humanum vident.
10. Mater bonos pueri mores et magnam diligentiam laudat.

## (122.)

1. The dust is red with human blood.
2. Our ears are full of dry dust.
3. The boys see the ashes of a large fire in the wood.
4. The ashes of his dead father are dear to the young man.
5. Thick clouds of dry dust are troublesome to the traveller.
6. The brigand's dress is wet with human blood.
7. The dust is wet with human blood.
8. The traveller sees the ashes of the enemy's city.
9. The sharp stones are troublesome to our feet.
10. The citizens cherish the ashes and bones of the celebrated poet.

## SECTION 43.

THIRD DECLENSION: RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE  
GENDER OF NOUNS IN *-IS*; RULE AND EXCEPTIONS.

(123.)

1. Prorae longarum navium interdum acutae sunt.
2. Frater sinistra, pater dextra, aure surdus est.
3. Hostes cotidie fines nostros magnis copiis vastant.
4. Mense Januario cives semper vettigilia regi pendunt.
5. Classis Romana Carthaginenses, nostrae civitatis hostes, terret.
6. Puella pulchras vestes, puer bonos libros, amat.
7. Vox tua, mater, auribus nostris semper grata est!
8. Hostis caput regis ense acento vulnerat.
9. Naves hostium longae a nostris militibus uruntur.
10. Clamores vulgi aures nostras non delectant.
11. Vests servi multo sanguine madidae sunt
12. Summa nostrorum civium honestas saepe laudatur.
13. Pax honesta civibus et militibus grata est.
14. Pulvis aestivo tempore viatoribus molestus est.
15. Multi majorum cineres conclave regium ornant.
16. Laudes oratorum et poetarum aures regias delectant.
17. Classi Romanae ducentae naves sunt.
18. Leges severae honestos cives non terrent.
19. Sunmo in colle equites hostium ab rege videntur.
20. Finis belli mercatori et civibus gratus est.

## (124.)

1. The enemy burn our harvests with fire.
2. The heads of many birds are beautiful.
3. The enemy throws the soldier into the rapid river.
4. The pirates fear the royal fleet.
5. The fire burns the girl's beautiful dress.
6. The sailors' clothes are wet.
7. The brigand's left ear is wounded by the royal sword.
8. The rapid fire burns the enemy's big city.
9. The maritime cities fear our ships.
10. The voices of many birds are known to the boy.
11. Rome is the capital (head) of the world.
12. The earth is wet with human blood.
13. The boy's head is wounded by the sharp stone.
14. The citizens are delighted with the abundant harvest.
15. Beautiful voices do not charm deaf ears.

## SECTION 44.

## THIRD DECLENSION : EXCEPTIONS TO -X BEING FEMININE.

## (125.)

1. *Judex bonus antiquos mores et leges antiquas laudat.*
2. *Senex cineres carae conjugis fovet.*
3. *Multi greges summo in colle videntur.*
4. *Dominus calicium aureorum magnum numerum habet.*
5. *Dux hostium fines nostros segetum plenos vastat.*

6. Pulvis sanguine magni ducis madidus est.
7. Magni imbre media nocte greges meos terrent.
8. Servus domino vinum in aureum calicem fundit.
9. Dominus carae conjugi pulchram vestem dat.
10. Vox custodis gregi nota est.

(126.)

1. The severe judge frightens bad men.
2. A good man loves his wife.
3. The good wives love their husbands (*r/r*).
4. The merchant gives a gold cup to the king.
5. Many flocks are known to the judges.
6. The cup is full of human blood.
7. The laws are known to the judges.
8. The flocks are known to their keepers.
9. At midnight the leader of the enemy lays waste the fields.
10. Our leader sees a large cloud of dust.

## SECTION 45.

THIRD DECLENSION : EXCEPTIONS TO -S PRECEDED BY  
A CONSONANT BEING FEMININE.

(127.)

1. Magnus fontium numerus fessis militibus gratus est.
2. Viator latos urbis nostrae pontes saepe laudat.
3. Dux impiger hostium montes arduos superat.
4. Dentes tui, puer, acuti sunt !

5. In summo monte copiae hostium a duce nostro videntur.
6. Fons viatoribus, longo itinere fessis, semper gratus est.
7. Dux hostium amnem rapidum longo ponte, media nocte, transit.
8. Mater pueru panem et aquam dat.
9. Fontes multam aquam fundunt.
10. Imagines regum et reginarum pontes urbis ornant.
11. Multarum gentium nomina et mores viatori nota sunt.
12. Mors ducis hostibus nostris molesta est.
13. Poeta pulchram puellae mortem longo carmine laudat.
14. Miser puer in aquam incidit, et vestis madida est.
15. Caesar amnem, ducentos pedes latum, transit.
16. Duces hostium magnum pontium numerum faciunt.

## (128.)

1. The soldiers are making a great bridge.
2. The mountains are steep, the river is rapid.
3. Caesar, the Roman leader, crosses the long bridge.
4. The slave gives wine to the young man, water to the boy.
5. The steep summits (heads) of the mountains frighten the traveller.
6. The teeth of many animals are sharp.
7. Many animals have a large number of teeth.
8. The king adorns the great bridge with a fountain.

9. There are many springs on (*in*) the mountains.
10. The enemy burn our bridge with fire.
11. The lazy boy is always throwing stones into the river.
12. The king adorns our city with trees.

### SECTION 46.

#### THIRD DECLENSION: RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE FEMININE RULE AND EXCEPTIONS.

(129.)

1. Classis Romana urbes hostium maritimas ferret.
2. Urbes maritimae classem Romanam timent.
3. Multis animalibus longi et acuti dentes sunt.
4. Media aestate copiae hostium altos montes superant.
5. Mareo, summae honestatis viro, pater mortuus est.
6. Aures surdas carmina puellae non delectant.
7. Dux hostium ponte lato annem transit.
8. Cineres mortui viri reginae cari sunt.
9. Pax interdum civibus grata, militibus molesta, est.
10. In arduis montibus multi sunt fontes aquae pleni.
11. Aestate media molestus saepe viatoribus pulvis est.
12. Judicis severi verba animos praedominunt terrent.
13. Puellam fessam quies delectat, clamores terrent.
14. Maritimae civitates multas semper naves habent.
15. Seni leges nostrae civitatis, juveni carmina nota sunt.

## (130.)

1. The war-ships have high prows.
2. Our fields are full of abundant harvests.
3. The rapid fire burns the city and the fleet of the enemy.
4. The good king gives a horse to his dear wife.
5. The gold cup is full of red wine.
6. The laws of our state are strict.
7. The leader with a loud voice blames the lazy common people.
8. Poets have often long hair.
9. The queen cherishes the ashes of her dead husband.
10. Night is welcome to tired men.
11. The summer months are often praised by the poets.
12. There are many flocks in the woods.
13. The honesty of the judges is known to the citizens.
14. A large part of the laws is known to the old man.
15. The right ear of the leader is wounded by your sword.

## (131.)

1. Densa nubes pulveris copiis regiis molesta est.
2. Enses nostri sanguine rubro hostium sunt madidi.
3. Multarum gentium duces nostrae civitati vectigalia pendunt.
4. Summas tuas laudes puer grato animo accipit.
5. Magna parvarum avium multitudo in silvis semper canit.

6. Lapide magno mulier ducem hostium vulnerat.
7. Milites siccum panem in rapidum annem jacint.
8. Magnae Ciceronis orationes aures Romanas delectant.
9. Milites colles imbre magno madidos superant.
10. Nocte obscura caput montis ardui non videtur.
11. Hostes latos nostrae civitatis fines vere primo vastant.
12. Multae imagines reginæ mortuæ conclave regis ornant.
13. Altæ arbores et pulchri flores in horto nostro sunt.
14. Hostes montes superant, et ordines nostros turbant.
15. Equites equos calcaribus incitant, et magnam hostium caedem faciunt.

## (132.)

1. Our gardens are two hundred feet (acc.) long.
2. The women have long hair.
3. The clothes of the girls are wet with the shower.
4. Good soldiers do not fear an honourable death.
5. Marcus praises the dead king *in* a long speech.
6. The rampart is red with the blood of the soldiers.
7. The judge is deaf *in* the right ear.
8. The king has a great multitude of horses.
9. The unhappy boy falls into the rapid river.
10. Beech-trees are in the woods, poplars in the gardens.
11. They are pouring water on (*in*, with acc.) the great fire.

12. The leader is lame in the left foot.
13. The soldiers receive great praise for their extreme diligence (genitive).
14. Some (*pars*) of the bones are (sing.) *those* of our men, some *those* of the enemy.
15. The keepers of the flocks are always faithful.

## IX.

### The Roman Army fights a Serpent.

Primo bello Punico Romani castra aliquando in Africa apud Bagradam flumen ponunt; multisque proeliis copias hostium egregia militum virtute superant. Sed, paucis post diebus, apparelt serpens ingentis magnitudinis; et exercitum fluminis usu prohibet. Milites primo ex vallo sagittis telisque serpentem petunt; deinde magnam manum Regulus consul educit. Serpens multos ingenti ore corripit; multos caudae voluminibus elidit; reliqui, metu perculti, ad castra celeriter fugiunt. Proximo die totus exercitus in campum educitur. Diu et acriter pugnatur. Tandem vero ballistas et catapultas admovent: crebris lapidum vulneribus serpens interficitur. Sanguis autem monstri vicinum flumen imbuit; et tota regio pestifero adflatu polluitur. Castra igitur Romani summovent. Corium, longum pedes centum et viginti, Romanum mittunt. Cives in templo ponunt.

## SECTION 47.

## THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER RULE.

The neuter terminations are *ar*, *ur*, *us*, *l*, *a*, *u*, *e*, *o*, *t*.

*ar*, *ur*, *us*.

Decline:—

1. Calcar acutum.	2. Crebrum fulgur.
A sharp spur.	The frequent lightning.
3. Litus longum.	
The long shore.	

(133.)

1. Equites acuto calcari equos semper incitant.
2. Crebra fulgura puellarum animos terrent.
3. Milites corpora hostium mortuorum trunnt.
4. Multa pecora in litore a nostris videntur.
5. Litus nautis, longo itinere fessis, gratum est.
6. Ius duci bello fesso saepe gratum est.
7. Homines aestivis mensibus frigus non timent.
8. Corpora nostra sanguinem et ossa habent.
9. Magna pecorum multitudo in agris hostium est.
10. Hostes magnam caudem pecorum nostrorum faciunt.
11. Summis in montibus frigus saepe magnum est.
12. Pueri magnis clamoribus pecora nostra terrent.
13. Duci nostro parvum est corpus, animus magnus.
14. Vergilius, poeta Romanus, rura et duces canit.
15. Milites nautas hostium et naves in litore vident.

## (134.)

1. The spurs of the horseman are sharp.
2. The horses of the enemy fear the lightning.
3. *In* the night the cold is often great.
4. The frequent lightning frightens the herds.
5. The shore is full of the bones of sailors.
6. Cold is troublesome to our bodies.
7. The lightning burns the high trees.
8. The sailors love the shore.
9. There are many herds in the fields.
10. Our *men* see the ships of the pirates on (*in*, with abl.) the shore.
11. The boys love the country *in* summer.
12. The poet loves the country, the orator the town.

## SECTION 48.

## THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER RULE.

us—(*Continued*).

## (135.)

1. Servus magnum onus in capite habet.
2. Caput magna pars corporis est.
3. Balbus corpus hostis ense meo vulnerat.
4. Multa pecorum genera nobis sunt.
5. Genus humanum antiqua tempora laudat.
6. Servus magnum librorum pondus portat.
7. Milites saepe magna pondera portant.
8. Opera poetarum nostrorum pueris nota sunt.

9. Fidus servus vinum in vulnus domini fundit.
10. Acuta equitum calcaria latus equi vulnerant.
11. Genus humanum crebram quietem amat.
12. Milites nostri sinistrum hostium latns superant.
13. Opera Ciceronis saepe ab oratoribus leguntur.
14. Tempora antiqua a poetis et oratoribus saepe laudantur.
15. Milites saepe latera equorum calcaribus vulnerant.
16. Amicus meus opus tuum saepe laudat.
17. Puer rus, juvenis urbem, amat.
18. Mense Januario magnum saepe frigus est.
19. Litus maritimum aestate semper gratum est.
20. Frigus generi humano molestum est.

## (136.)

1. The great burden is troublesome to the woman.
2. The boys read every day the works of Cicero.
3. The slaves carry great burdens.
4. The orator often praises the quiet of the country.
5. There are many kinds of animals.
6. The sides of the mountains are steep.
7. The merchant's ships are carrying great burdens.
8. The human race loves money.
9. The soldiers do many kinds of works.
10. The enemy receive many wounds.
11. The lame slave is carrying a great burden.
12. The soldier is dead from his wound.
13. The soldier is wounded on (*in*, with abl.) the right side.
14. The left flank of the cavalry is overcome by our men.
15. There are many kinds of books.

## SECTION 49.

THIRD DECLENSION : NEUTER RULE.—(*Continued*).*l, a, n, c, e, t.*

Decline :—

1. Magnum animal.	4. Album lac.
A large animal.	White milk.
2. Pulchrum poëma.	5. Latum mare.
A beautiful poem.	The wide sea.
3. Flumen latum.	6. Magnum caput.
The broad stream.	A big head.

(137.)

1. Poëma tuum amicus meus semper legit.
2. Poetae laudem vulgi interdum grato animo accipiunt.
3. Nauta impiger saepe latum mare transit.
4. Lac album pueris, juvenibus vinum rubrum, patres dant.
5. Magna parvorum animalium multitudo mare incolit.
6. Mater mea antiqua carmina semper canit.
7. Caput fratri puer acuto militis ense vulnerat.
8. Multae urbes et multae civitates regi vectigalia pendunt.
9. Lac multum puerō, longo itinere fesso, mater dat.
10. Calices aurei regium conclave ornant.
11. Dux magnum flumen longo ponte transit.

12. Magnus vectigalium numerus hostibus nostris molestus est.
13. Flumen sanguine nostrorum hostium rubrum est.
14. Dux hostium lata flumina et montes altos transit.
15. Milites castra alto aggere semper circumdant.

(138.)

1. Many animals inhabit the sea.
2. The names of the soldiers are known to the leader.
3. The tax is a troublesome burden to the citizens.
4. The colour of wine *is* red, the colour of milk *is* white.
5. Wine *is* often red, milk *is always* white.
6. Long hair adorns the heads of the girls.
7. The lord gives bread and milk to his slaves every day.
8. Your name *is known* to the king and queen.
9. The active merchant often crosses the broad sea *in* his ship.
10. The young man often reads the beautiful poems of Catullus.

## SECTION 50.

## THIRD DECLENSION : EXCEPTIONS TO THE NEUTER RULE.

(139.)

1. Pecudes nostraes frigore mortuae sunt.
2. Fulgura crebra improbos fures terrent.

3. Dextro latere palus magna, sinistro ardui colles sunt.
4. Fur miserorum animos viatorum terret.
5. Frigus magnum militibus nostris molestum est.
6. Genera (the genders) multorum verborum pueris nota sunt.
7. Multae hostium pecudes in castris Romanis sunt.
8. Verba judicis furem improbum terrent.
9. Multae et magnae paludes molestae sunt.
10. Ora fluminis magnam faciunt paludem.
11. Fures improbi magnum pecuniae pondus habent.
12. Leges severae fures improbos non terrent.
13. Pecudes tenerae magnos imbrres timent.
14. Fur improbus aureos regis calices habet.
15. Paludes, crebris imbris madidae, copiis nostris molestae sunt.

## (140.)

1. The wicked thief crosses the river by the bridge.
2. The lord wounds the thieves with his sword.
3. The lightning-flashes frighten the tender flocks (use *pecus*).
4. The river is welcome to the tender flock.
5. Many flocks are on (*in*, abl.) the mountains.
6. The wicked thieves frighten the girl.
7. The leader of the enemy crosses the great marsh.
8. There are great marshes on the shore.
9. The marshes are often dry *in* the summer months.
10. Many thieves inhabit our city.

## SECTION 51.

THIRD DECLENSION: EXCEPTIONS TO NEUTER RULE—  
*(Continued).*

(141.)

1. Dux egregiam militum virtutem magna voce laudat.
2. Juventuti Romanae bellum gratum est, pax molesta.
3. Juventus nostra verba senum contemnit.
4. Juventus Romana montes arduos superat, flumina transit.
5. Verba hostium senes timent, juvenes contemnunt.
6. Egregia tua virtus, miles, saepe a duce laudatur!
7. Hostes egregiam nostrorum equitum virtutem saepe laudant.
8. Senex opera Ciceronis saepe magna diligentia legit.
9. Orator juventutem "auream" vocat.
10. Dux militi calcaria, praenitia virtutis, dat.
11. Juvenes saepe senectutem miserari vocant.
12. Senibus magna onera saepe molesta sunt.
13. Clamores puellarum improbos fures terrent.
14. Multi greges latas paludes incolunt.
15. Egregia ducis nostri virtus militibus nota est.

(142.)

1. The young man *praises* old age, the old man *praises* youth.

2. The songs charm the Roman youth (*juventus*).
3. Cicero often praises old age.
4. Young men despise lazy old age.
5. Old age is often troublesome to the human race.
6. The courage of the young men is known to the leader.
7. The leader often praises the extraordinary courage of his soldiers.
8. Youth is called "golden" by the orator.
9. The young man despises wounds and death.
10. The young men call old age unhappy.

## SECTION 52.

THIRD DECLENSION: EXCEPTIONS TO NEUTER RULE—  
*(Continued).*

(143.)

1. Consul noster egregiam militum virtutein laudat.
2. Vulgus consules magnis clamoribus culpat.
3. Sol madidas nautarum vestes siccat.
4. Mors, servis et dominis, regibus et vulgo, finis vitae est.
5. Poeta vitam rusticam, orator urbanam laudat.
6. Sol aestivus interdum fesso viatori molestus est.
7. Hostes consuli nostro magna vectigalia pendunt.
8. Opera rustica senes saepe delectant.
9. Senex vitam urbanam, puer rusticam, amat.
10. Vulgus verba consulis grato animo accipit.

11. Sol interdum aestivis mensibus segetes nostras urit.
12. Rex hostium egregiam consulum honestatem laudat.
13. Soror mea cotidie teneris avibus panem dat.
14. Multi homines rusticos mores contemnunt.
15. Senex egregiam carae conjugis virtutem laudat.

(144.)

1. Poets often praise the sun in their poems.
2. The king drains the broad marshes.
3. The sun makes a long journey every day.
4. The queen likes country bread.
5. The Roman youth blames the consul.
6. Poets love the sun and the summer.
7. The town thieves frighten the common people.
8. The old men praise the quiet of country life.
9. The sun is welcome to the human race.
10. The Roman consul surrounds the camp with a high rampart.

## SECTION 53.

THIRD DECLENSION : RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE NEUTER RULE AND EXCEPTIONS.

(145.)

1. Miles crebra fulgura contemnit.
2. Puer corpus magnum, animus parvus est.

3. Nautae, mari magno,<sup>1</sup> litus amant.
4. Consules dextrum hostium latus superant.
5. Vita multis hominibus onus molestum est.
6. Miles poemata conteinnit, orationes laudat.
7. Sol aestivus tenerae pecudi saepe molestus est.
8. Juvenis frigora contemnit, fulgura timet.
9. Regina auream in capite coronam habet.
10. Sermo consulis facetus juvenes delectat.
11. Puer improbus lapides acutos in pecora nostra jacit.
12. Fons servo, magno onere fesso, gratus est.

(146.)

1. Many sailors inhabit the shore.
2. The sailor gives many herds to the brigand.
3. The boys read the works of the poet every day.
4. The sun burns the sides of the mountains.
5. The old man loves the quiet of the country (adj.)
6. The thieves of the town (adj.) despise *those* of the country (adj.)
7. The soldiers despise milk, wine they praise.
8. The unhappy sailors fall into the sea.
9. The lightning-flashes are frequent *in* the summer months.
10. The lord has many herds.

(147.)

1. Fons servo magno onere fesso gratus est.
2. Egregia oratorum opera saepe a Marco leguntur.

<sup>1</sup> Abl., "When the sea is rough."

3. Milites nostri multas pecudes in finibus hostium capiunt.
4. Genus humanum vitam amat, mortem timet.
5. Dominus aestivis mensibus litus maritimum incusat.
6. Rex noster altum (deep) flumen ponte transit.
7. Juventus urbana vitam rusticam contemnit.
8. Nigrae nubes et crebra fulgura animos puellarum terrent.
9. Corpus ducis nostri vulnerum plenum est.
10. Servus domini improbos fures ense terret.
11. Juventus nostra egregiorum opera poetarum nostrorum conteinnit.
12. Egregia juventutis nostrae virtus a senibus laudatur.
13. Rex hostium flumen rapidum magno ponte transit.

## (148.)

1. Our youth despise country occupations (use *quod*).
2. The active king drains the marsh.
3. The shore is welcome to the tired sailors,
4. The slave is tired with the great weight of his burdens.
5. Old age is not always troublesome.
6. Our young men often fall into debt.
7. The leader of the Gauls throws the Roman ranks into confusion.
8. The queen always inhabits the country *in* the summer.
9. Our bodies are tired with the long journey.
10. The wicked thief is in the royal room.

## X.

## A Battle.

Caesar media nocte castris omnibus copiis exit; et iter ad flumen facit. Nota tamen est res hostibus; et prima luce nostri copias hostium pedestres in summo colle vident. Tum Caesar in dextro et sinistro cornu equites collocat, et militum animos paucis verbis ad pugnam incitat. "Milites, omnis spes civitatis Romanae in virtute nostra est; fortibus victoria est." Hostes primo sinistrum exercitus latus, deinde dextrum carpunt; postremo in medios ordines impetum faciunt. Longa et acris pugna, crebra vulnera. Non terrent nostros ingentia hostium corpora, magnique clamores. Pugnam in manibus faciunt, et brevi tempore hostes ex omnibus partibus superant. Dux hostium in manus nostras incidit. Caesar egregiam militum virtutem laudat; et omnibus praemia dat. Tum summa celeritate domum redeunt, et a civibus magna laude excipiuntur.

## SECTION 54.

THIRD DECLENSION: THE GENDER RULES APPLIED, TO  
NEW WORDS.

(149.)

1. Hieme media saepo molestum est senibus frigus.
2. Carcer regius animos furum et praedonum terret.

3. Consules foedus honestum cum (with) rege hostium faciunt.
4. Prima luce dux hostium pontem urbanum transit.
5. Egregia juventutis nostrae virtus a poeta laudatur.
6. Dux noster firmum cum hostibus foedus facit.
7. Lux bonis grata, improbis molesta est.
8. Hiemem gelidam et crebros imbres non amant puellae.
9. Pecudes tenerae aestate latas fagos amant.
10. Fures improbi verba judicis non timent; careerem antiquum contemnunt.

(150.)

1. In <sup>1</sup> mid-winter the nights are long.
2. The town prison is full of thieves.
3. Our enemies despise treaties.
4. Winter is always troublesome to old men.
5. The sun gives clear light to men.
6. The Roman soldier has a sword *on* the right side.
7. The town prisons are known to the brigands.
8. The honourable treaty is welcome to the soldiers.
9. *At* early dawn the soldiers march.
10. Our herds (*use grec*) love the summer showers.

<sup>1</sup> The pupil will now have seen that the English word "in" (or "at") should be left out before nouns expressing divisions of time. "In summer" is *aestate*, "in winter" is *hieme*, "in mid-summer" is *media aestate*, etc. The word "in" will therefore be no longer put in *italics*.

## SECTION 55.

THIRD DECLENSION : THE GENDER RULES APPLIED TO  
NEW WORDS—(*Continued*).

(151.)

1. Consul pigrae plebi Romanae panem cotidie dat.
2. Agmen longum hostium montem arduum superat.
3. Labores corporis senibus, pueris animi molesti sunt.
4. Magni murmura montis nostros nautas non terrent.
5. Puella multos flores in horto carpit, et matri dat.
6. Plebs Romania carcerem magnis cum clamoribus urit.
7. Equites regii agmen nostrum cotidie carpunt.
8. Mons magno cum murmure ignem et cineres fundit.
9. Milites suinmolabore montes media aestate superant.
10. Rex noster foedus cum praedonibus facit, et a civibus culpatur.

(152.)

1. The Roman commons blames the consul's plans.
2. Our cavalry harass the enemy's column.
3. Great is the labour of the march to the soldiers.
4. The consul despises the murmurs of the common people.
5. The trees are not beautiful in mid-winter.
6. The active soldiers praise the great labours of war.
7. The consuls call the Roman commons lazy.

8. At early dawn our column crosses the bridge.
9. Your father does not praise your plans, boy!
10. The leader despises the murmurs of the tired soldiers.

### SECTION 56.

#### THIRD DECLENSION: THE GENDER RULES APPLIED TO NEW WORDS—(*Continued*).

(153.)

1. Nautae regiones terrae nostrae maritimas incolunt.
2. Murmura multarum in silvis frondium terrent puellam.
3. Me longae valles, te montes ardui lataque flumina delectant.
4. Custodes hortorum multos flores autumno curpunt.
5. Dextra flumen rapidum, sinistra altae rupes sunt.
6. Mons prima luce ignem cineresque in vulnus nostram fundit.
7. Lata fagus aestate magnam frondium multitudinem habet.
8. Amicus maritimam urbis nostrae regionem incolit.
9. Magnae in summis montibus rupes magnaequae arbores sunt.
10. Rex cum finitiinis civitatibus foedus firmum facit.

(154.)

1. The rocks and rivers are troublesome to our column.

2. The plans of the king are not always agreeable (*gratus*) to the commons.
3. The leaves of the beech-tree and the oak are beautiful in autumn.
4. The valleys are welcome to the herds and flocks in winter.
5. The commons inhabits the maritime district of the city.
6. The colours of the beautiful leaves are various in autumn.
7. Many men inhabit the little valley.
8. The enemy inhabit the neighbouring districts.
9. The rock is red with the blood of the traveller.
10. In autumn the nights are often cold.

## SECTION 57.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Adjectives of this declension are not so fully declined as those of the second declension. They have seldom three forms for the three genders, and often only one. Those that end in *-is* are thus declined :—

#### *Singular.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Fortis	fortē.
Acc.	Fortem	fortē.
Gen.		Fortis.
Dat.		Forti.
Abl.		Forti.

*Plural.**Masc. & Fem.*

Nom & Acc.	Fortes
Gen.	Fortium.
Dat. & Abl.	Fortibus.

*Neut.*

fortia.

(155.)

1. In omni genere laborum Marcus amicos superat.
2. Breves aestate noctes sunt, hieme longae.
3. Calices regis aurei gravi pondere<sup>1</sup> sunt.
4. Multi et fortis viri mortui sunt.
5. Senex majores, viros fortes et graves, laudat.
6. Hostes latera castrorum omnia aggere circumdant.
7. Brevem laborem, quietem longam pueri pigri annant.
8. Navis longa sumnia celeritate mare transit.
9. Graves sunt navium longarum prorae.
10. Gravia sunt ducis Romani vulnera.
11. Miles fortis brevi ense latus sinistrum ducis vulnerat.
12. Omnia Ciceronis opera magistro nostro nota sunt.
13. Hiems tempus longarum noctium, aestas brevium est.
14. Dux summam fortium militum celeritatem laudat.
15. Omnia amicorum diligentiam laudat Balbus.
16. Consul, vir bonus et fortis, hostes superat.
17. Omni tempore amici hominibus grati sunt.
18. Brevis quies militibus est, labor longus.

<sup>1</sup> Are of heavy weight, i.e. are very heavy.

19. Breve litus terrae nostrae est.
20. Servi fortes furem improbum in conclavi regio vident, dominumque vocant.

## (156.)

1. All men praise virtue and honesty.
2. The names of all the soldiers are known to the leader.
3. The life of men is short.
4. The women are often tired with a short journey.
5. The wounds of the enemy are severe.
6. The unhappy woman is carrying a heavy burden.
7. Our slaves are brave and active.
8. Our leader is wounded by the brave soldier.
9. The words of the orator are weighty and brave.
10. The soldiers march with all speed.
11. The consul praises the courage of the brave soldiers.
12. Not all animals have feet.
13. The queen likes short poems and long orations.
14. The soldiers carry the heavy body of the dead leader.
15. The enemy make the camp with all speed.

## SECTION 58.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION—(*Continued*).*Sapiens* and *audax* are declined thus:—*Singular.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Sapiens.	
Acc.	Sapientem	sapiens.
Gen.	Sapientis.	
Dat.	Sapienti.	
Abl.	{ Sapienti. <sup>1</sup> Sapiente.	

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. & Acc.	Sapientes	sapientia.
Gen.	Sapientium.	
Dat. & Abl.	Sapientibus.	

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Audax.	
Acc.	Audācem	audax.
Gen.	Audacis.	
Dat.	Audaci.	
Abl.	Audaci.	

[<sup>1</sup> The proper adjectival ending of the ablative sing. is in *i*; but the ending in *-e*, in adjectives ending in *-ns*, is used, as a rule, in prose, when the adjective is either used as a substantive or in agreement with a person—*eo sapiente*, or *a viro sapiente*; but *animō sapienti*.]

*Plural.*

<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. & Acc.      Audaces	audacia.
Gen.                Audacium.	
Dat. & Abl.        Audacibus.	

(157.)

1. Ingentia ossa multorum animalium sunt.
2. Puer animo audaci furem ense patris vulnerat.
3. Consul a Marco, magno viro et sapiente, laudatur.
4. Milites nostri in omnibus bellis hostes superant.
5. Corpora nostroruin hostium ingentia sunt.
6. Consilio sapienti tuo pater tuus delectatur.
7. Nominia sapientium puero nota sunt.
8. Dominus a fure audaci vulneratur.
9. Milites nostri ingens hostium agmen vident.
10. Ingens in omnibus terris aes alienum est.
11. Difficilia omnibus media aestate sunt longa itinera.
12. Rex, vir sapiens, urbem magno ponte ornat.
13. Opera Ciceronis pueris saepe difficilia sunt.
14. Milites ingenti cum labore montes superant.
15. Puer difficile Catulli poema magna diligentia legit.

(158.)

1. Nothing frightens the minds of the wise.
2. The labour is not easy to all.
3. Marcus calls the animal wise.
4. The huge animal frightens the little girl.
5. The king gives a huge sum of money to the chant.

6. Your father, a wise man, praises the works of Cicero.
7. Long journeys are difficult for old men.
8. A short journey is difficult for a lame *man*.
9. Many lands are known to the daring sailor.
10. The shores of our sea are known to the daring sailors.
11. The ships of the enemy are huge.
12. Nothing is difficult to the daring mind.

### SECTION 59.

#### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION—(*Continued*).

Adjectives in *-er* of the third declension have three endings in the nominative singular, and are declined like *acer* :—

##### *Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Acer	acris	acre.
	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>
Acc.	Acrem		acre.
Gen.		Acris.	
Dat. & Abl.		Acri.	

##### *Plural.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. & Acc.	Acres	aeria.
Gen.		Acrium.
Dat. & Abl.		Acribus.

The one adjective *celer* is thus declined :—

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Celer	celēris	celere.
Acc.		Celerēi	celere.
Gen.		Celeris.	
Dat. & Abl.		Celeri.	

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. & Acc.	Celēres	celeria.
Gen.		Celerum.
Dat. & Abl.		Celeribus.

(159.)

1. Acres hostium equi, impigri equites.
2. Multae et ingentes rupes agmini nostro molestae sunt.
3. Copiae pedestres hostium equites nostros superant.
4. Hostes summa celeritate in fines nostros veniunt.
5. Grave et molestum regi nostro vulnus est.
6. Praedones audaces saepe in nostram vallem veniunt.
7. Nautae firmai et celerein navem laudant.
8. Pater meus omnia Ciceronis opera habet.
9. Mense Decembri non sunt in arboribus frondes.
10. Gravia sunt militum pedestrium vulnera.
11. Nostri partem hostium vulnerant, partem capiunt.
12. Corpora multorum animalium ingentia sunt.
13. Dux noster consilium celere capit, et prima luce pontem transit.

14. Celeres hostium equites agmen nostrum saepe carpunt.
15. Militum pars ingentia onera, pars nihil portat.
16. Copiae nostrae hostes pugna in pedestri superant.
17. Mense Decembri magnum et acre saepe frigus est.
18. Aestas celeris transit, venitque acris hiems.
19. Navis hostium celeris brevi tempore nostrum mare transit.
20. Celeres hostium equites copias nostras pedestres saepe in itinere carpunt.

(160.)

1. Keen is winter's tooth.
2. Their lord's piercing voice is known to the slaves.
3. The infantry battle is long and spirited.
4. A journey on foot is tiresome to the horseman.
5. Our life is a short and quick *one*.
6. The soldiers make a long and quick march.
7. In the month of December the soldiers take the enemy's city.
8. Quick horses delight the horsemen.
9. The number of the royal books is enormous.
10. The consul forms a weighty and wise plan.
11. Your labours, *my friend*, *are* easy ; mine are difficult.
12. Nothing is difficult to the daring young man.
13. The commons inhabits the middle district of the city.
14. Marcus is a spirited and active man.
15. Winter *is* keen, spring is welcome.

## XI.

## A Roman Account of Britain.

Omnium insularum, quae Romanis notae sunt, maxima est Britannia; et insulas, quidem, nostri maris<sup>1</sup> multis partibus superat. Hominum est infinita multitudo; crebra aedificia; pecorum magnus numerus. Arborum omnium generum copia est. Aurum, et argentum, et alia metalla, inveniuntur. Frigus non est magnum; caelum autem crebris imbribus ac nebulis foedum. Unum latus insulae ad Galliam, alterum ad Hispaniam, alterum ad Germaniam spectat. Incolarum humanissimi sunt qui Cantium incolunt: nam huc naves ex Gallia omnes et mercatores veniunt. Galli, ut est fama, hanc maritimam partem occupabant; aedificia Gallicis similia, mores idem, sermo haud multum diversus. Non notae sunt Britannis segetes, sed lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque vestiuntur. Corpora vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem. Crines longi sunt; labrum superius non radunt. In bello ingenti virtute pugnant.

## SECTION 60.

## THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

These nouns end either in *-us* or in *-u*. Those that end in *-us* are, as a rule, masculine; those that end in *-u* are always neuter.

<sup>1</sup> "Our sea" to a Roman is the Mediterranean.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Exercitūs	exercitūs.
Acc.	Exercitūm	exercitūs.
Gen.	Exercitūs	exercitūm.
Dat.	Exercitui (exercitu)	exercitibus.
Abl.	Exercitu	exercitibus.

## (161.)

1. Exercitui Romano et copiao pedestres et equites sunt.
2. Fluctus ingentes miseram navem in litus agunt.
3. Equites acri impetu exercitum hostium turbant.
4. Poema tuum ducentos versus habet.
5. Exercitui nostro nihil est difficile.
6. Ventus celer nigras nubes agit.
7. Hostes latera exercitus nostri saepe carpunt.
8. Nostri arma capiunt, et exercitum hostium superant.
9. Copiae pedestres multa et gravia vulnera accipiunt.
10. Magister versibus pueri nunquam est contentus.
11. Copiae ingentes hostium a nostris superantur.
12. Impetus fluctuum ingentium animos nautarum terret.
13. Nostri nautae multas naves cum hominibus (crews) capiunt.
14. Galli celeri impetu ordines exercitus nostri turbant.
15. Exercitus Romani montes arduos et flumina lata transeunt.
16. Nautae audaces ingentes fluctus et magna murmuraria maris contemnunt.
17. Venti et fluctus navem nostram in rupes agunt.

18. Copiae pedestres castra hostium summa celeritate capiunt.
19. Milites audaces celerem impetum magnosque clamores hostium contemnunt.
20. Galli equos calcaribus incitant, et magnum in nostros impetum faciunt.

(162.)

1. Our army receives a great defeat.
2. The defeat of the Roman army is welcome to the enemy.
3. The wind drives huge waves upon (*in*, with acc.) the shore.
4. The huge waves drive the unhappy ships upon the sharp rocks.
5. The Roman soldiers make a spirited charge upon the enemy.
6. Our *men* with their first charge throw the ranks of the enemy into confusion.
7. The boy's verses are often bad.
8. The good boy does a large number of verses every day.
9. The sailors' clothes are wet with the waves.
10. The Roman army comes into the territory of the Gauls.
11. The great waves and the black clouds frighten the sailors.
12. There is *only* a short rest for our army.
13. The enemy with the first charge overcome the infantry forces.

14. The wise man fears, not the waves, not the lightning-flashes, not the prison.
15. The daring soldier takes the leader of the enemy *prisoner*.

## SECTION 61.

### FOURTH DECLENSION—(*Continued*).

Neuter nouns in *-u* are declined like *cornu* :—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. & Acc.	Cornu	cornua.
Gen.	Cornūs	cornuum.
Dat. & Abl.	Cornu	cornibus.

(163.)

1. Puer laborem longum et difficilem conficit.
2. Ventus naves mercatoris in portum agit.
3. Servus ingens onus manibus portat.
4. Multae et antiquae quercus in silva sunt.
5. Puer magnas manus, pedes longos habet.
6. Naves ducentae in portu urbis nostrae sunt.
7. Equites nostri primo impetu primos hostium ordines turbant.
8. Dextrum nostrorum cornu ab hostibus superatur.
9. Exercitum omnem in finibus Gallorum collocat.
10. Servi opus conficiunt, et a domino laudantur.
11. Quercui longa, hominibus brevis, vita est.
12. Balbus manu sinistra ense Galli vulneratur.
13. Exercitus noster multos homines vulnerat, multos capit.

14. Equitum partem in sinistro, partem in dextro, cornu collocat.
15. Naves praedonum in portum veniunt, et animos civium terrent.
16. Multae in silvis arbores sunt—quercus, fagi, populi.
17. Puella manus parvas, aures magnas, habet.
18. Naves nostrae omnes portum capiunt.
19. Puer dextra manu librum, sinistra florem, habet.
20. Aves aestivis mensibus semper in summa quercu canunt.

## (164.)

1. Many animals have horns.
2. The horns of many animals are sharp.
3. The waves drive the ship into harbour.
4. The harbours are full of war-ships.
5. All the harbours of our shore are known to the sailors.
6. There is a large number of oaks in the wood.
7. The king has the sword in his right hand.
8. The fire burns the king's right hand.
9. The poet finishes his song in a short time.
10. He places all the cavalry on (*in*, abl.) the right wing.
11. All the enemy's harbours are known to the leader.
12. The army finishes its march with great diligence.
13. The soldiers finish the work with the utmost speed.
14. The leaves of the broad oak are beautiful in autumn.
15. The hands of the slave are red with his master's blood.

## SECTION 62.

FOURTH DECLENSION—(*Continued*).

*Domus*, a house, belongs to this declension, though some of its cases are formed according to the second declension. In gender it is feminine.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Domus	domūs.
Aec.	Domum	<i>domos</i> (sometimes, <i>domus</i> ).
Gen.	Domūs	<i>domorum</i> (sometimes, domium).
Dat.	Domui	domibus.
Abl.	<i>Domō</i> (sometimes, domu)	domibus.
	At home, domi.	
	(To) home, domum.	
	From home, domo.	

(165.)

1. Marcus et rusticam et urbanam domum habet.
2. In media regione urbis parvae sunt plebis domus.
3. Marēus domi, Balbus foris semper est.
4. Servi opera conficiunt, et domum redeunt.
5. Mater mea hieme nunquam domo exit.
6. Rex magnum portum pontemque longum aedificat.
7. Galli omnibus copiis domo exeunt, et bellum cum Romanis faciunt.
8. Domus partem dominus, partem servi, incolunt.

9. Hortus, variorum florū plenus, domum nostram ornat.
10. Balbus conjugi pulchram domum in litore aedificat.
11. Arbores densae domum nostram madidam faciunt.
12. Mercator nunquam domi est; semper iter facit.
13. Caesar equites omnes in dextro cornu collocat.
14. Pueri mense Decembri domum redeunt.
15. Dominus servo parvam domum in palude aedificat.
16. Gallorum pars iter facit, pars domi manet.
17. Marcus amicum meum domi tuae saepe videt.
18. Pueri aestivis mensibus saepe foris sunt.
19. Domos multas mercator servis aedificat.
20. Magnum domorū numerū aedificant mercatores.

## (166.)

1. The merchant's house is large.
2. My friend is satisfied with our house.
3. In winter the old men remain at home.
4. The lord builds a small house for his slave.
5. The soldier returns home in the winter.
6. In the royal house there are many rooms.
7. The thief goes from home at midnight.
8. The active old man is always out of doors in the summer months.
9. The slave has the king's gold cup in his hands.
10. The broad oak is welcome to the tired flock.
11. The rooms of my house are small.
12. Balbus is always at home.
13. In summer the boys are always out of doors.
14. Caesar places all the cavalry on the right wing.
15. The merchant goes out from home at early dawn.

## SECTION 63.

## THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The nouns of this declension end in *-es*, and are feminine:—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Res	res.
Acc.	Rem	res.
Gen.	Rei	rērum.
Dat.	Rei	rēbus.
Abl.	Re	rebus.

(167.)

1. Res adversae sapientium animos non terrent.
2. Leges bonae reipublicae utiles sunt.
3. Multae res pueris difficiles, juvenibus faciles sunt.
4. Multi et clari duces in republica nostra sunt.
5. Balbus rebus in adversis contento animo (abl. English “of”) est.
6. Consilia senum reipublicae rebus in adversis utilia sunt.
7. Marcus multas res mea causa facit.
8. Rebus in secundis pigri saepe sunt homines.
9. Milites saepe reipublicae causa sanguinem fundunt.
10. Caesar equites celeres in sinistro cornu collocat.
11. Servi domino ingentem domum in litore aedificant.
12. Puellae magni causā imbris domum redeunt.

13. Rebus in secundis saepe juvenes consilia senum contemnunt.
14. Verba sapientis saepe reipublicae utilia sunt.
15. Puer mortis causā patris domi manet.

(168.)

1. The commonwealth is dear to the citizens.
2. Maritime affairs are known to sailors.
3. The consul finishes the affair with the utmost speed.
4. Cicero's oration is useful to the commonwealth.
5. A great multitude of birds returns in early spring.
6. The city affairs are known to the consul.
7. The ship does not go out *from* harbour in winter.
8. Adversity is known to all men.
9. City affairs delight the minds of the young men.
10. The wise man does not fear adversity.
11. Old men are often delighted with country occupations (*res*).
12. The causes of many things are known to men.

## SECTION 64.

### FIFTH DECLENSION—(*Continued*).

Dies, a day, is masculine.

(169.)

1. Marcus multos dies domi meae manet.
2. Opera Ciceronis magnam partem diei legunt.

3. Dux paucos dies in finibus hostium manet.
4. Spes rerum secundarum in animis civium est.
5. Cives impigri reipublicae semper sunt utiles.
6. Omnis spes nostra in celeritate est.
7. Exereitus noster nocte ac die iter facit.
8. Caesar magnis itineribus in fines hostium venit.
9. Postero die prima luce Caesar castra hostium oppugnat, et capit.
10. Magna est spes victoriae in animis militum fortium.
11. Sapiens rebus in adversis spem bonam fovet.
12. Omnis spes militum in consule est.
13. Paucos dies amici tui domi tuae manent.
14. Postero die copiae hostium pedestres castra oppugnant.
15. Rebus in adversis pauci, multi in secundis, hominibus amici sunt.

(170.)

1. The boy loves the summer days.
2. There is little hope of victory for our men.
3. The young men have good hopes.
4. In summer the nights are short, the days long.
5. The Roman army makes a march of many days.
6. The days are long to the lazy, short to the active.
7. *On* the following day Caesar overcomes the forces of the enemy.
8. The hope of victory urges on the minds of the soldiers.
9. The consul on the following day besieges the neighbouring city.

10. My father remains a few days (acc.) for my sake (abl.)
11. Victoria is the name of our queen.
12. The old man's plan is the cause of a great defeat.

### SECTION 65.

#### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE DECLENSIONS.

(171.)

1. Multis animalibus brevis vita est.
2. Puella carmina antiqua semper canit.
3. I'pater meus nunquam fessus est.
4. Magnum librorum numerum domi habent.
5. Partem conclave regiorum servi incolunt.
6. Conjux mea cordi meo cara est.
7. Cineres conjugis mortuae senex fovet.
8. Nubes nigrae in capite montis sunt.
9. Animi sapientium mortem non timent.
10. V'estes puellarum saepe albae sunt.
11. Paludes ingentes urbi hostium molestae sunt.
12. Lac pueris et puellis utile est.
13. Crebra fulgura teneras aves terrent.
14. Ventus fluctus ingentes in portum agit.
15. Mater mea aestate saepe foris est.

(172.)

1. A great part of the Gauls remains at home.
2. The traveller finishes his journey in early summer.

3. The boy returns home tired every day.
4. His wife's letter is welcome to the traveller.
5. The women of the city (adj.) despise *those* of the country (adj.).
6. My brother remains many days (acc.) at home.
7. In autumn the colours of the leaves are various.
8. The boy falls into the cold water.
9. Nothing frightens the brave minds of the wise (plur.)
10. The quiet of the country (adj.) is welcome to the tired leader.
11. An honourable peace finishes the long war.
12. The marshes are always dry in summer.

## (173.)

1. Brevis impigris, longus pigris, labor est.
2. Hieme media senes vitam urbanam amant.
3. Prima luce fures improbi domum redeunt.
4. Ora clamoresque vulgi consulem terrent.
5. Amicus tuus paucos dies domi meae manet.
6. Rebus in adversis grati sunt amici.
7. Cicero magnum opus in manibus habet.<sup>1</sup>
8. Hostes equites omnes in cornibus collocant.
9. Naves celeri vento in rupes acutas aguntur.
10. Dentes parvi et albi puellae sunt.
11. Nautae proras navium floribus ornant.
12. Verba matrum pueri sapientes non contemnunt.
13. Calix regis aureus vini plenus est.
14. Multi greges sunt in arduis montibus.
15. Longi puellae crines in aquam incident.

<sup>1</sup> "Has on hand," "is working at."

## (174.)

1. In the month of December the cold is often great.
2. Work is easy to boys, to old men difficult.
3. All the districts of the city are known to the thief.
4. The boys dry their wet clothes by the summer sun.
5. Country occupations sometimes delight the youth of the town.
6. The murmurs of the quick wind frighten the minds of the sailors.
7. Shouts are not troublesome to deaf ears.
8. The enemy lays waste our crops in the middle of the summer.
9. The traveller stays at home: the showers are heavy.
10. My sisters often read the works of the poets.
11. Soldiers are never satisfied with their rewards.
12. Town affairs charm you, country affairs me.

## (175.)

1. Egregia militum virtus reipublicae semper utilis est.
2. Dominus magna voce surdum servum vocat.
3. Dux murmura vulgi clamoresque militum contemnit.
4. Pecudes tenerae nocte ad urbem redeunt.
5. Puer difficile poema magna diligentia legit.
6. Praedones maritimi vento secundo mare nostrum transeunt.
7. Latus nostrorum sinistrum equites hostium saepe carpunt.

8. Grave pondus librorum servus claudus portat.
9. Ingentia Germanorum corpora milites nostros  
terrent.
10. Fontes crebri viatori in itinere grati sunt.
11. Multae quercus latera montis ornant.
12. Aqua pecoribus et hominibus media aestate grata  
est.
13. Vox judicis severi animos civium improborum  
terret.
14. Nomina multorum poetarum et oratorum pueris  
nota sunt.
15. Enses acuti hostium magnam nostrorum caedem  
faciunt.

(176.)

1. Our forces come with the utmost speed into the town.
2. The abundant harvests are useful to the common-  
wealth.
3. Country people (men) blame town people.
4. Poplars are beautiful in gardens, beech-trees in  
woods.
5. In prosperity all *men* have friends.
6. Our commonwealth is praised by all *men*.
7. The Roman armies remain in camp in the winter.
8. Hands are useful to the human race.
9. The leader sees a great dust in the valley.
10. Strict laws often do not frighten wicked men.
11. The lord praises the remarkable honesty of the  
keepers.
12. Many oaks are in the wood.

## (177.)

1. Puer improbus semper in greges nostros lapides jacit.
2. Furibus aquam et panem custodes carceris cotidie dant.
3. Equites nostri primo impetu copias Gallorum pedestres superant.
4. Naves longae vento secundo ad portum omnes redeunt.
5. Imagines clarorum majorum animos nostros ad virtutem incitant.
6. Balbus, vir sapiens et clarus, versus nostros laudat.
7. Dextra densae silvae et magna palus, sinistra amnis rapidus est.
8. Aves in arboribus parvas domos saepe habent.
9. Multitudo regem et (both) voce et manibus terret.
10. Hostes magnis clamoribus ordines nostros primo impetu turbant.
11. Classis nostra ventis secundis primo vere reddit.
12. Pontem in flumine ducentos pedes longum rex facit.
13. Duces hostium castra lato aggere semper circumdant.
14. Serno amici facetus me rebus in adversis delectat.
15. Aves prima aestate redeunt, et in horto nostro nocte ac die canunt.

## (178.)

1. The maritime cities pay great taxes to the pirates.
2. Our army receives a great defeat in the month of January.

3. On a dark night the leader goes out from the camp with all his forces.
4. The hands of the thieves are red with human blood.
5. The energetic (active) poet makes two hundred verses every day.
6. The young man praises a spirited horse, the old man a good book.
7. The advice of wise *men* is always useful to the commonwealth.
8. The king builds a big prison on the top of the hill.
9. The daring sailors go out from the harbour with a contrary (*adversus*) wind.
10. The leader, weary from his severe wound, goes out from the battle.
11. The consul's long speech is troublesome to the Roman commons.
12. The enemy harass our column on the march every day.

## (179.)

1. Servus aureum regis calicem in manum capit.
2. Omne conclave in nostra domo mensum habet.
3. Rex acrem equum calcaribus aureis in medium pugnam incitat.
4. Galli publico consilio in fines nostros media aestate veniunt.
5. Pecunia hominibus causa multorum malorum saepe est.

6. *Juventus nostra equos amat, pugnamque pedes-trem contemnit.*
7. *Verba magistri interdum pigrum puerum ad dili-gentiam incitant.*
8. *Juvenum partem poetae, partem oratores delec-tant.*
9. *Victoriam ducis nostri et oratores et poetae laudant.*
10. *Hostes vectigalia tempore nunquam pendunt.*
11. *Exercitus Romani pacem orbi terrarum dant.*
12. *Me vita urbana sermonesque amicorum delectant.*
13. *Consul, vir summa virtute, mores juventutis nostrae culpat.*
14. *Postero die Marcus domum meam venit, et te multis verbis culpat.*
15. *Fluctus ingentes navem in rupe\$ acutas agunt: nautae in mare incident.*

(180.)

1. The girl has a book in the right hand, a rose in her left.
2. The neighbouring tribes make a firm treaty with (*cum*, with abl.) our state.
3. The fields are white with the bones of many brave soldiers.
4. The unhappy girl remains at home, her sisters are out of doors.
5. The king of the enemy always has a gold crown on his head.
6. The shores of our sea are full of great harbours.
7. Many praise, few blame, old times.

8. Old age is a heavy burden to many men, to few  
is it welcome.
9. The country, country life, and country manners,  
charm me.
10. Many soldiers on the right wing are wounded by  
the enemy.
11. The war-ships go out from the harbours in early  
summer *in* a long line.
12. Young men in all lands fall into debt.

## XII.

## A Ghost.

Athenodōrus, philosophus, spatiōsam et capacēm domūm Athenis exiguo pretio emit. Aliquot dies ibi feliciter habitabat. Tandem per silentium noctis, dum librum legit, strepitum vinculoruī, longius primo, deinde e proximo, audit. Mox apparet senex: os pallidum est; corpus mācie confectum; vestes squalidae; longa barba; capillus horridus; cruribus compedes, manibus catenas, gerit quatitque. Stat monstrum, dīgitoque Athenodoro adnuit. Surgit philosophus, tollitque lumen, effigiem secuturus. Ibat illa lento gradu: sequitur Athenodorus. Tandem desflexit in aream domūs: tunc dilapsa deserit comitem. Athenodorus signum loco' ponit. Postero die locum effodit: inveniuntur ossa catenis implicita.

## SECTION 66.

## THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: THE COMPARATIVE.

*Altus, high; altior, higher.*

(*Gratus, welcome; gratior, more welcome.*)

*Brevis, short; brevior, shorter.*

Altior, gratior, brevior are called the comparatives of altus, gratus, brevis.

To form the comparative the rule is to take the genitive singular of the adjective, and change the *-i* or *-is* into *-ior*; so—

altus—alti—altior; brevis—brevis—brevior.

The comparative is thus declined:—

*Singular.*

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom. Brevior	brevius.	Breviores	breviora.
Acc. Breviōrem	brevius.	Breviores	breviora.
Gen.	Brevioris.		Breviorum.
Dat.	Breviori.		Brevioribus.
Abl.	Breviore.		Brevioribus.

(181.)

1. Ventus nocte acrior est.
2. Quid incertius est quam res humanae?
3. Dies hieme quam aestate gelidiores sunt.
4. Patri saepe filius quam filia carior est.
5. Nihil bonis civibus carius est quam res publica.
6. Senes sapientiores quam juvenes semper sunt.
7. Tui oculi quam mei acriores sunt

8. Romani audaciores quam hostes sunt.
9. Imbres saepe aestate quam hieme crebriores sunt.
10. Labores mei quam tui difficiliores sunt.
11. Versus Balbo quam Marco faciliores sunt.
12. Magister verbis gravioribus puerum culpatur.
13. Consilium tuum sapientius quam meum est.
14. Sermo Balbi quam Marci facetior est.
15. Labienus de adventu Caesaris milites certiores facit.
16. Opera Ciceronis quam Caesaris difficilia sunt.
17. Itinera saepe aestate quam hieme difficilia sunt.
18. Hostes aeriorem impetum in nostrum exercitum faciunt.
19. Milites Labienum de adventu equitum certiore faciunt.
20. Res adversae saepe hominibus utiliores quam secundae res sunt.

## (182.)

1. Nothing is more useful to men than the sun.
2. What is more uncertain than human life?
3. Oaks are often more useful than beech-trees.
4. In summer the nights are shorter than in winter.
5. Nothing is more dear to men than life.
6. Julia is more beautiful than Cornelia.
7. Poplars are higher than oaks.
8. Marcus is carrying a heavier burden than Quintus.
9. Balbus has braver slaves than Aulus.
10. The Gauls pay heavier taxes.
11. Balbus's horse is quicker than Marcus's.

12. Caesar informs the soldiers of (*de*) the arrival of the enemy.
13. Balbus's wound is more severe than Marcus's.
14. The poets of the Greeks are more celebrated than *those* of the Romans.
15. Balbus informs Marcus of (*de*) the death of Quintus.

---

*Nihil incertius est quam vitā* is not the only way in which "nothing is more uncertain than life" can be turned. One may also say *Nihil incertius vitā est*, "quam" being left out, and the following noun put into the ablative.

(183.)

1. Quid vita humana incertius est?
2. Miles mercatore non semper audacior est.
3. Marcus Quinto non est sapientior.
4. Populi quercūbus<sup>1</sup> non latiores sunt.
5. Pane flores non sunt utiliores.
6. Quid bello militibus gratius est?
7. Roma Corinthus non est clarior.
8. Marcus non est facetior Quinto.
9. Filia filio patri non est carior.
10. Quid hominibus oculis utilius est?

(184.)

1. The brother is not wiser *than* the sister.
2. Boys are not always braver *than* girls.
3. What is more welcome *than* the harbour to the tired sailor?

<sup>1</sup> Nouns of the fourth declension in *-cus*, and some others sometimes, make the dative and ablative plural in *-ubus* instead of *-ibus*.

4. What is more beautiful *than* your dress?
5. Nothing is more welcome to tired men *than* quiet.
6. What is more troublesome *than* a summer journey?
7. What is more welcome to the traveller *than* water?
8. What is more useful to men *than* their hands?

## SECTION 67.

### THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES—(Continued).

#### THE SUPERLATIVE.

*Brevis, short; brevior, shorter; brevissimus, shortest.*

*Altus, high; altior, higher; altissimus, highest.*

The superlatives of most adjectives are formed by changing the *-i* or *-is* of the genitive singular into *-issimus*.

The superlative *altissimus* means not only "highest" or "most high," but "very high." In the following exercise the superlatives should be translated with the use of "very."

(185.)

1. Dies hieme saepe brevissimi sunt.
2. Epistulae longissimae filiae patrem delectant.
3. Multae Italiae urbes clarissimae sunt.
4. Quintus amico carissimus est, sed Marcus earior.
5. Liber magistro quam puero gratior est.
6. Multorum animalium dentes acutissimi sunt.
7. Marcus ingentissimam pecuniam Balbo pendit.
8. Aulus, vir sapientissimus, clamores vulgi contenit.

9. Leges Lycurgi quam Solonis severiores sunt.
10. Quid dulcius est quam vera sapientia?
11. Quid morte tristius? quid vita dulcior?
12. Rex clarissima voce cives ad arma vocat.
13. Multa flumina Asiae latiora quam Europae sunt.
14. Pueri saepe dulcissimum vinum amant.
15. Rus saepe hieme tristissimum est.

## (186.)

1. The enemy's ships are very long.
2. The oak is a very broad tree.
3. Aristophanes is a very witty poet.
4. Quintus is a very strict judge.
5. In summer the days are longer than in winter.
6. The enemy's swords are very sharp.
7. To many animals the life is very short.
8. Good men love true wisdom.
9. The sweet water is very welcome to the sailor.
10. Quintus has broader lands than Marcus.
11. Balbus is very wise, Marcus is wiser.
12. Julia is very sad to-day.

---

The superlatives in the following exercise should be translated without "very."

## (187.)

1. Quintus omnium judicum severissimus est.
2. Omnium onerum senectus gravissimum est.
3. Mi Balbo carissimie! te omnes culpant.
4. Balbus, vir clarissimus, civibus carus est.

5. Hostium fortissimi sunt Germani.
6. Rusticus panis dulcissimus est.
7. Mors rerum tristissima est.
8. Aristophanes poetarum facetissimus est.
9. Quid te, carissime frater, terret?
10. Omnia puellarum Julia hodie tristissima est.

(188.)

1. Quintus is the bravest of all the soldiers.
2. Of all the boys Balbus is the saddest.
3. Your letters are very welcome to your father.
4. Demosthenes is the most celebrated of orators.
5. Your ship is the longest of all the ships.
6. Quintus is the most faithful of my slaves.
7. True wisdom is the most delightful of things.
8. Life is a very uncertain thing.

## SECTION 68.

### THE SUPERLATIVE—(*Continued*).

1. Pulcher, *beautiful*; pulcherrimus, *most beautiful*. Adjectives in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rīmus* to the nominative.
2. A few Adjectives in *-is* form the superlative by changing the *-is* into *-īmus*.

*Facilis, facillimus.*

*Difficilis, difficillimus.*

*Similis, simillimus.*

*Dissimilis, dissimillimus.*

## (189.)

1. Carmina Horatii pulcherrima sunt.
2. Hominibus pigerrimis labores molesti sunt.
3. Regina regi moribus similis est.
4. Quintus fratris<sup>1</sup> simillimus est.
5. Acerrimi sunt multorum avium oculi.
6. Litus saluberrimum ab omnibus laudatur.
7. Aulus omnium longe pauperrimus est.
8. Julia difficillimam libri partem legit.
9. Mores fratris et sororis dissimillimi sunt.
10. Urbes maritimae saluberrimae sunt.
11. Versus Quinto facillimi, Marco difficillimi, sunt.
12. Multae res pueris obscurae et difficillimae sunt.
13. Omnium sororum Julia longe pulcherrima est.
14. Colores florum varii et dissimillimi sunt.
15. Mei labores difficillimi, tui facillimi, sunt.

## (190.)

1. The life of men is often very unhappy.
2. My house is the healthiest.
3. Julia is the most beautiful of all the girls.
4. Quintus is like to his sister.
5. Julia is very like to her brother.
6. The young man is reading very difficult books.
7. The thing, *my* dearest brother, is very easy.
8. Marcus is very unlike to Quintus.

<sup>1</sup> *Similis* takes either the genitive or dative after it. [Filius patris similis est, *the son is the image of his father*; filius patri similis est, *the son is like his father*.]

9. The pirates' ships are by far the quickest.
10. The very beautiful ship charms the citizens.
11. Quintus, a very poor man, despises money.
12. The boys are very sad to-day.

## (191.)

1. Hiems anni gelidissimum tempus est.
2. Domus Quinti longe pulcherrima est.
3. Dissimillimi puerorum mores sunt.
4. Quintus pecuniam utilissimam rem vocat.
5. Ventus ingentes fluctus in litus semper agit.
6. Colores frondium autumnio pulcherrimi sunt.
7. Sapientibus nihil honestate carius est.
8. Socrates omnium hominum longe sapientissimus est.
9. Julia sorore multo pulchrior est.
10. Vita hominibus brevissima est, multis animalibus brevior.
11. Labienus de omnibus rebus Caesarem cotidie certiorem facit.
12. Quintus mortis causa fratris nunquam domo exit.
13. Plebi Romanae omnes labores molestissimi sunt.
14. Caesar summa celeritate in fines hostium iter facit.
15. Marcus veram sapientiam rem dulcissimam vocat.

## (192.)

1. Life is an uncertain thing.
2. What is more difficult than virtue?
3. Quintus calls old age a very heavy burden.

4. The woods of the Germans are by far the densest.
5. Sailors are often more daring than soldiers.
6. Quintus inhabits a very healthy city.
7. The Romans make a very firm treaty.
8. The reward is more welcome to Marcus than to Balbus.
9. Frequent marches make the army more healthy.
10. War is a very sad thing, peace a very sweet thing.

### SECTION 69.

#### IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

*Comparative.*      *Superlative.*

Bonus, *good*; melior, *better*; optimus, *best*.  
 Malus, *bad*; pejor, *worse*; pessimus, *worst*.

(193.)

1. More&lsquo;s Marci quam Balbi meliores sunt.
2. Sapientissimi homines semper optimi sunt.
3. Nihil malo vino pejus, nihil bono melius est.
4. Fures nocturni omnium pessimi sunt.
5. Virtus et sapientia res optimae sunt.
6. Athēnae (Athens) Roma salubiores sunt.
7. Virtus quam sapientia melior est.
8. Quid pace melius? quid bello tristius?
9. Balbus Caesarem de adventu meo facit certiorem.
10. Tempora nostra quam antiqua meliora sunt.

## (194.)

1. What is better than true wisdom ?
2. Wisdom is a very good thing.
3. Your manners are worse than *those* of Balbus.
4. Marcus has by far the worst slaves.
5. The characters of the brother and sister are very unlike.
6. The city has very good harbours.
7. Nothing is better than honesty.
8. Your manners, dearest Balbus, are very bad !

## SECTION 70.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON—(*Continued*).

*Magnus, great ; major, greater ; maximus, greatest.*  
*Parvus, small ; minor, smaller ; minimus, smallest.*

## (195.)

1. Corpora Germanorum quam Gallorum majora sunt.
2. Balbus maximam et pulcherrimam domum aedificat.
3. Puellae saepe minimis rebus terrentur.
4. Pecudes meae omnium optimae sunt.
5. Quid veri similius est ?
6. Labores tui quam mei, amice carissime, minores sunt !
7. Balbus majus praemium quam frater accipit.

8. Maximae res, Marce, non semper sunt optimae !
9. Roma aestate viatoribus non est saluberrima.
10. Fratrum Marcus maximus natu est.
11. Balbus matris, Marcus patris, simillimus est.
12. Exercitus hostium pontem longissimum transit.
13. Pater filium natu minorem semper culpat.
14. Quintus parvus, Balbus minor, Aulus minimus est.
15. Animalia minima saepe maxima corpora habent.

## (196.)

1. Oaks have larger leaves than beech-trees.
2. The prows of our ships are very large.
3. The waves are smaller to-day.
4. Balbus is younger than Quintus.
5. The boy's head *is* very small, his feet are very large.
6. A very small part of the army marches.
7. What is better for little girls *than* good milk ?
8. My friend is very sad to-day.
9. Julia is the youngest of her sisters.
10. Quintus is by far the eldest of his brothers.
11. Your house is far smaller than mine.
12. Balbus informs me of the battle.

## XIII.

Arminius, the German Leader, defeats the Romans.

Quintilius Vārus exercitu Romano in Germaniam vēnit, et Germanos pessimo modo tractat. Multa enim vectigalia a Germanis, qui neque aurum neque argentum possident, postulat ; legibus etiam Romanorum parere, et lingua

Latinā in judiciis dicere jubet. Arinīnius, autem, dux Germanorum, cives a tanta tamque superba Romanorum dominatione liberare constituit. Varus igitur per silvam densissimam iter facit. Subito Arminius ingentibus totius Germaniae copiis impetum in Romanos facit. Romani, longi labore itineris fessi, impetum Germanorum non sustinent: plurimos in pugna, alios in fuga Germani interficiunt; ceteros capiunt. Varus autem gladio se ipse interficit. Sic unus vir, prudentia et virtute, Germanos a dominatione Romanorum liberat. Imperator Augustus, simul ac nuntium magnae illius clavis accipit, maximo dolore affectus, exclamat "Quintili Vare, legiones redde." Germania autem ab illo tempore libera erat.

## SECTION 71.

### NUMBERS: THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

I.	unus -a -um. <sup>1</sup>	XI.	undēcim.
II.	duo.	XII.	duodecim.
III.	trēs.	XIII.	tredecim.
IV.	quattuor.	XIV.	quattuordecim.
V.	quinque.	XV.	quindecim.
VI.	sex.	XVI.	sedecim.
VII.	septem.	XVII.	septendecim.
VIII.	octo.	XVIII.	duodeviginti.
IX.	nōvēni.	XIX.	undeviginti.
X.	dēcēni.	XX.	viginti.

<sup>1</sup> For the genitive and dative singular of *unus* see p. 183.

*Duo* is declined :—

	<i>Musculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	duo	duae	duo.
Acc.	duo <i>and</i> duos	duas	duo.
Gen.	duorum	duarum	duorum.
Dat. & Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus.

*Tres* is declined :—

	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	tres	tria.
Acc.	tres	tria.
Gen.		trium.
Dat. & Abl.		tribus.

The rest are not declined at all.

(197.)

1. Una avis ver non facit.
2. Puer duas res uno tempore conficit.
3. Julia fratres quattuor, sorores quinque, habet.
4. Juvenis unum annum Romae (in Rome) manet.
5. Quid dulcius voce humana est?
6. Trium fratribus Alexander natu maximus est.
7. Duo equites iter quindecimi dierum faciunt.
8. Frater sorore tribus annis natu minor est.
9. Mensae regiae viginti pedes longae sunt.
10. Flumen viginti pedes altum, ducentos latum, est.
11. Filius meus quam tua filia duobus annis natu minor est.
12. Viator duodeviginti genera arborum in hortis videt.

13. Urbs nostra pontes octo, carceroes duos, portus tres, habet.
14. In horto nostro fagos duodeviginti, populos septendecim, quercus duas, vident.
15. Marcus et Quintus nostrae civitatis clarissimi sapientissimique viri sunt.

(198.)

1. The city has three harbours.
2. The old man has one tooth.
3. My brother is reading two letters.
4. The father gives two rewards to his son.
5. There are nine oaks in the garden.
6. Marcus has five daughters.
7. The king adorns the bridge with ten fountains.
8. Fifteen horsemen are coming.
9. The king has twenty horses.
10. The royal house has nineteen rooms.

## SECTION 72.

NUMBERS: CARDINAL—(*Continued*).

21.	XXI. Unus et vi-	100. C. Centum.
	ginti or vi-	200. CC. Duecenti, -ae, -a.
	ginti unus.	300. CCC. Trecenti, -ae, -a.
28.	XXVIII. Duodetriginta.	500. D. Quingenti, -ae, -a.
29.	XXIX. Undetriginta.	600. DC. Sescenti, -ae, -a.
30.	XXX. Triginta.	1000. M. Mille.
50.	L. Quinquaginta.	2000. MM. Duo milia.

*Passus, -ūs, a pace.*

*Mille passus, 1000 paces, a mile.*

*Duo milia passuum, 2000 paces, two miles.*

*Mille* in the singular is indeclinable and is an adjective: *milia* (not *millia*), the plural, is declined, and is a noun.

(199.)

1. Rex duodetriginta calices aureos habet.
2. Regina hodie undetriginta annos habet.
3. Marcus unum et viginti annos natus est.
4. Conclave regium quinquaginta pedes longum est.
5. Seni pauperrimo duodecim filii sunt.
6. Magister sescentos triginta libros habet.
7. In urbe nostra viginti milia civium sunt.
8. Triginta tres judices sunt.
9. Marcus et Balbus dissimillimi sunt.
10. Regina quinquaginta tres servos habet.
11. Urbs nostra aestivis mensibus non est saluberrima.
12. Duo fratres mortis causa matris tristissimi sunt.
13. Dux hostium centum et unum flumina transit.
14. Mille equites agmen nostrum in itinere carpunt.
15. Caesar a finibus Gallorum milia passuum duodecim abest.
16. Balbus Caesarem de clade duorum exercituum certiorem facit.
17. Maximus natu fratrum vitam rusticam amat.
18. Hortus domini trecentos pedes longus, latus centum pedes est.
19. Caesar a finibus hostium non longius milibus passuum duobus abest.

20. Milites nostri non longius milibus passuum viginti  
a castris hostium absunt.

(200.)

1. Marcus has twenty-one slaves.
2. There are two and twenty trees in the garden.
3. The month *of* February (*Februarius*) has twenty-eight days.
4. The queen gives fifty books to the citizens.
5. Balbus sees thirty ships in the larger harbour.
6. The king has twenty-nine swords in his room.
7. Caesar is a mile off.
8. The army is two miles off.
9. The soldiers are not farther than three miles off.
10. The month *of* June (*Junius*) has thirty days.
11. Pompeius has a fleet of five hundred ships.
12. The valleys in the enemy's territories are very long.
13. The enemy are nine miles from our camp.
14. The eyes of many birds are very keen.
15. The harbour is not farther than four miles from the city.

## SECTION 73.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1st. Primus.	11th. Undecimus.
2nd. Secundus.	12th. Duodecimus.
3rd. Tertius.	13th. Tertius decimus.
4th. Quartus.	14th. Quartus decimus.
5th. Quintus.	15th. Quintus decimus.
6th. Sextus.	16th. Sextus decimus.
7th. Septimus.	17th. Septimus decimus.
8th. Octavus.	18th. Duodevicesimus.
9th. Nonus.	19th. Undevicesimus.
10th. Decimus.	20th. Vicesimus.

All these are declined like *bonus*.

(201.)

1. Puer quintum Belli Gallici librum legit.
2. Hora diei decima Caesar ad castra redit.
3. Dux quartum partem militibus dat.
4. Balbus de adventu tertiae legionis Caesarem certiorem facit.
5. Puer miserrimus in gelidissimam aquam incidit.
6. Sexto decimo die milites in longissimam vallem veniunt.
7. Septima noctis hora Caesar omnibus copiis castris exit.
8. Caesar in dextro cornu decimam, in sinistro sextam, legionem habet.

9. Septima decima legio opus summa celeritate conficit.
10. Copiae nostrae duodecimo die in fines hostium veniunt.
11. Undevicesimo die nostri magnam caedem hostium faciunt.
12. Puer maximo cum labore viginti versus facit.
13. Tertio anno messis largissima est.
14. Hostes quinto die milia passuum duo absunt.
15. Septimo decimo die nostri non longius milibus passuum quattuor ab finibus hostium absunt.

## (202.)

1. Marcus is first, Quintus second.
2. The queen is in the third room.
3. He often reads your eighth letter.
4. The boy often makes very good verses.
5. The courage of the tenth legion is great.
6. My brother is the first in the class.
7. The soldiers of the ninth legion receive a great defeat.
8. Caesar praises the courage of the eleventh legion.
9. February is the second month of the year.
10. *On* the twentieth day the enemy often harass our column.

## SECTION 74.

NUMBERS: ORDINAL—(*Continued*).

21st. Unus et vicesimus. 100th. Centesimus.

50th. Quinquagesimus. 1000th. Millesimus.

(203.)

1. Quinquagesimo regni anno regina mortua est.
2. Una res saepe multas causas habet.
3. Ducenti cives jam mortui sunt.
4. Caesar triginta naves, Pompeius quinquaginta, habet.
5. Uno et vicesimo anno Galli Romanos superant.
6. Quarta decima nocte equites ad castra redeunt.
7. Viginti genera arborum in hortis publicis sunt.
8. Copiae hostium ab urbe nostra longissime absunt.
9. Caesar largissimas segetes in finibus hostium videt.
10. Anno urbis centesimo tertio poeta mortuus est.
11. Duo consules omnibus copiis in fines hostium veniunt.
12. Miles unus longo ense quattuor hostes vulnerat.
13. Colles ardui fassis itinere militibus molestissimi sunt.
14. Novem maria nautae fortissimo jam nota sunt.
15. Tertio et vicesimo anno regni rex maximum portum aedificat.
16. Pauci milites summa celeritate opus conficiunt.
17. Naves tres et quadraginta jam ad portum veniunt.

18. Dominus hodie viginti novem epistulas habet.
19. Rex diligentiam undecim judicium saepe laudat.
20. Anno millesimo quinquagesimo quarto hostes magnam cladem accipiunt.

## (204.)

1. There are eight districts of the city.
2. It is already the hundredth year of the war.
3. There are twelve states in the territories of the enemy.
4. Our soldiers are very far off.
5. The younger of the boys has few friends.
6. In the twenty-first year of his reign the king died.
7. Our camp is very far away from the river.
8. A few horsemen overcome two thousand of the enemy.
9. The boy is already making his hundredth verse.
10. The leader places a thousand soldiers on the top of the hill.
11. The leader's wound was by far the most severe.
12. The enemy make two charges on (*in*, with acc.) our forces.
13. The soldiers finish the work on the nineteenth day.
14. The girl gathers twenty-five flowers.
15. The forces of the enemy are not farther off *than* two miles.

## SECTION 75.

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(205.)

1. Leges nostrae civitatis longe severissimae sunt.
2. Quid tuis laudibus, Balbe, dulcius est ?
3. Crines puellarum longissimi et pulcherrimi sunt.
4. Poeta cineres mortui amici semper fovet.
5. Milites majorem pulverem in valle vident.
6. Frigus summis in montibus maximum est.
7. Mors reginae in ore omnium est.
8. Arbor igne uritur.
9. Romani castra altissimo aggere circumdant.
10. Puer tertium librum Belli Gallici legit.
11. Conclave regium plenum omnium librorum est.
12. Poema tuum, mi frater, Marcus semper laudat !
13. Ballus sorore decem annis natu minor est.
14. Pessimi cives egregium consulem semper culpant.
15. Rex conjugem consilii certiore facit.

(206.)

1. Nothing is better than true courage.
2. The marsh is never very healthy.
3. The sun dries the boys' wet clothes.
4. The leader's arms are by far the most beautiful.
5. Few slaves are always praised by their masters.
6. The night is dark with black clouds.

7. The citizens give the queen two hundred crowns.
8. The beautiful spurs delight the boy's mind.
9. The old songs are praised by the old men.
10. What is worse than bad verses?— Nothing.
11. Our herds have very large horns.
12. The best citizens praise the courage of the king and queen.

(207.)

1. Quid juventute dulcius? quid senectute tristius?
2. Juventus nostra mores majorum contemnit.
3. Optimi cives virtutem duorum consulum laudant.
4. Albam puellae vestem juvenis semper laudat.
5. Hostes in sinistrum latus exercitus impetum faciunt.
6. Copiae pedestres milia passuum quinque a silvis absunt.
7. Puer bonus quinquaginta versus una hora conficit.
8. Verba matrum filios ad majorem diligentiam incitant.
9. Quindecim puellae mensam reginæ variis floribus ornant.
10. Tria milia hostium ad urbem nostram hodie veniunt.
11. Imagines clarorum majorum viros ad virtutem incitant.
12. Hostes acerrimo impetu primos nostrorum ordines turbant.
13. Multitudo avium omnium generum semper aestate canit.

14. Major natu fratum semper in aes alienum incidit.
15. Senex pauperrimus dextro pede claudus, sinistra aure surdus, est.

(208.)

1. The women are never satisfied with the rewards of the queen.
2. Balbus has three sisters and two brothers.
3. The cavalry of the enemy are quicker than ours.
4. The young men despise the words of the wise old men.
5. The one soldier wounds four enemies.
6. The hearts of all the citizens are very sad.
7. The marshes are dry with the summer sun.
8. Faithful slaves are praised by their masters.
9. The most unhappy old man has few teeth.
10. The slaves are very poor; they have nothing.
11. The woods are very thick in the summer months.
12. The leader's sword is red with the blood of many enemies.

#### XIV.

##### Dates in Early English History.

Anno quinquagesimo quinto ante Christum natum Caesar primum in Britanniam vénit, neque tamen diu in insula nostra manet. Deinde proximo anno iterum cum copiis vénit. Post paucos autem menses copias reducit. Anno quadragesimo tertio post Christum natum Claudius, imperator Romanus, in Britanniam venit, et totam paulatim insulam in suam potestatem Romani redigunt.

Annos circiter trecentos quinquaginta Romani insulam tenent. Vias sternunt, castra muniunt, domos villasque aedificant, frumentum serunt, muro ingenti feras Caledoniae gentes ab incursionibus prohibent; pacem Britannis dant. Anno autem circiter quadringentesimo decimo Romani legiones suas reducunt. Anno quadringentesimo quadragesimo nono Angli, maiores nostri, primum navibus insulam capiunt.

## SECTION 76.

### THE VERB *ESSE*, TO BE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.—*Present Tense.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. 1st Person.	<i>Sum, I am.</i>	<i>Sunnum, we are.</i>
2. 2nd Person.	<i>Es, thou art or you are.</i>	<i>Estis, you are.</i>
3. 3rd Person.	<i>Est, he, she, or it, is.</i>	<i>Sunt, they are.</i>

*Es* translates “you are” only when *one* person is spoken to.

(209.)

1. Fratre meo non tribus annis natu major sum.
2. Ego sum miles, tu nauta es.
3. Ego omnibus civibus carus sum: te omnes culpant.
4. Sorori meae moribus dissimillimus sum.
5. Puer piger es, et patri tuo dissimillimus.
6. Milites hie ne viginti naves aedificant.

7. Dextro pede claudus sum, et sinistra aure surdus.
8. Ego quattuordecim, tu duodecim annos natus es.
9. Nos judices severi sumus, vos non estis.
10. Patri simillima sum, matri dissimillima.
11. Marcus fortissimus miles esse dicitur.
12. Optimi cives estis; consilia omnes laudant.
13. Poeta pulcherimum puellae os saepissime laudat.
14. Nos veterissimi milites sumus, vos nautae veterissimi estis.
15. Urbs nostra saluberrima esse dicitur.
16. Pondus armorum fessis militibus molestissimum est.
17. Milites nostri omnium fortissimi esse dicuntur.
18. Athenae a Sparta centum quinquaginta milia passuum absunt.
19. Non rupes, non imbres, non montes veterem viatorem terrent.
20. Verba magistri animos puerorum ad majorem diligentiam incitant.

## (210.)

1. *We* are in the garden to-day.
2. I am first, you are second.
3. *You* are a very brave soldier, and a consummate (*summus*) orator.
4. *You* are very faithful guardians of the laws, judges!
5. The water is very cold to-day.
6. I am lame, you are deaf.

7. *We* are tired with *our* journey ; your conversation is very troublesome.
8. *I* am the youngest of all.
9. We are sailors, you are soldiers.
10. *I* am very unhappy ; *my* father never praises me.
11. *We* are very sad to-day ; *our* friends are very far away.
12. The very frequent lightning-flashes do not frighten the old (*vetus*) soldier.
13. You are very wise, we are not wise.
14. The prison is two miles distant from the royal house.
15. The characters of young men and of old men are very unlike.

## SECTION 77.

THE VERB *ENSE*, TO BE—(*Continued*).

### *Future Tense.*

#### *Singular.*

1. *Ero*, *I shall be.*
2. *Eris*, *you will be.*
3. *Erit*, *he will be.*

#### *Plural.*

1. *Erimus*, *we shall be.*
2. *Eritis*, *you will be.*
3. *Erunt*, *they will be.*

### *Imperfect Tense.*

#### *Singular.*

1. *Eram*, *I was.*
2. *Eras*, *you were.*
3. *Erat*, *he was.*

#### *Plural.*

1. *Erāmus*, *we were.*
2. *Erātis*, *you were.*
3. *Erant*, *they were.*

## (211.)

1. Paucis annis omnes mortui erimus: brevis hominibus vita est.
2. Pigris hominibus omnes labores difficiles erunt.
3. Sermo tuus, puer, non semper gratus est: hodie fessi sumus.
4. Hostes ab urbe nostra longissime aberant.
5. Nomina maximorum fluminum pueris nota erant.
6. Balbe et Marce, amici mei veterissimi, heri ubi eratis?—In silva, Quinte, eramus!
7. Quando domi eris, mi Quinte?—Quid! ego semper sum domi.
8. Lac parvo tuo fratri saluberrimum erit.
9. Heri Romae eram, hodie Florentiae (in Florence) sum, cras Veronae (in Verona) ero.
10. Ubi heri eras?—A Roma longe aberam.
11. Cras viginti quinque naves longae in portu maximo erunt.
12. Romulus primus rex Romanorum erat.
13. Puer improbus acutissimos lapides in teneras pecudes jacit.
14. Priamo, regi Trojae (Troy), quinquaginta filii et quinquaginta filiae erant.
15. Pontes urbis nostrae optimi esse dicuntur.
16. Temporibus Servii Tullii octoginta tria milia civium Romanorum erant.
17. Vetus nauta nubes densissimas et impetum venti non timet.
18. Magnum est pauperrimo poetae aes alienum.

19. Quid vita rustica dulcius? quid urbana vita tristius?
20. Tu, Balbe, bonus puer es; vos, Quinte et Marco,  
semper pigri critis!

## (212.)

1. To-morrow I shall be at home: where will you be?
2. Where will *you* be in the winter?—*I* shall be in  
the city, Balbus!
3. The plans of the old men will be useful to the  
young men.
4. *I* was yesterday in the public gardens; to-morrow  
*I* shall be at home.
5. Your arrival was very welcome to all, Marcus!
6. Balbus, where were *you* yesterday?—*I* was in the  
country.
7. *We* were all satisfied with your letter.
8. *You* were always very good boys.
9. In the summer our father will be in Italy, we  
boys shall be at home.
10. My friends, when will *you* be at home?—*We*  
shall be at home to-morrow.
11. The characters of the Gauls and Germans were  
very unlike.
12. The oldest wine will always be the best.
13. *In* a few years the works of Caesar will be known  
to the boys.
14. Yesterday *I* was the first in the class, you were  
second, Balbus was third.
15. Yesterday *you* were first, to-day *you* are third,  
to-morrow *you* will be fifth.

## SECTION 78.

THE VERB *ESSE*, TO BE—(*Continued*)*Perfect Tense.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Fui, I have been</i> (or) <i>I was.</i>	1. <i>Fuimus, we have been</i> (or) <i>we were.</i>
2. <i>Fuisti, you have been</i> (or) <i>you were.</i>	2. <i>Fuistis, you have been</i> (or) <i>you were.</i>
3. <i>Fuit, he has been</i> (or) <i>he was.</i>	3. <i>Fuērunt and } they have been</i> <i>fuēre, } (or) they were.</i>

*Future Perfect Tense.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Fuēro, I shall have been.</i>	1. <i>Fuērimus, we shall have been.</i>
2. <i>Fuēris, you will have been.</i>	2. <i>Fuēritis, you will have been.</i>
3. <i>Fuērit, he will have been.</i>	3. <i>Fuērint, they will have been.</i>

*Pluperfect Tense.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Fuēram, I had been.</i>	1. <i>Fuērāmus, we had been.</i>
2. <i>Fuēras, you had been.</i>	2. <i>Fuērātis, you had been.</i>
3. <i>Fuērat, he had been.</i>	3. <i>Fuērant, they had been.</i>

## (213.)

1. Saepe jam Romae sui : Athenis<sup>1</sup> nūquām ero.
2. Iter Balbo saluberrimum fuerit.
3. Fuimus hodie in mari, eras in silvis erimus.
4. Vester puerorum madidae fuerant ; jam siccae erant.
5. Pulvis eramus, pulvis erimus.
6. Marcus jam sex annos Romae fuerat.
7. Mane Romae eram, nunc rure sum, vespere domi ero.
8. Rebus in adversis oīnes tristes sunt.
9. Mane domi manet, vespere semper foras exit.
10. Tu, mi Balbe, fratri meo optimus amicus fueris !
11. Naves Gallorum nostris navibus dissimillimae sunt.
12. Milites veteres septimae legionis saepissime a Caesare laudantur.

## (214.)

1. You were always a very good friend, dearest Ballus!
2. The labours of the soldiers will have been very great.
3. The horses will be very useful to our soldiers.
4. Many and great have my labours already been.
5. The slaves are now building nine ships for their master.

<sup>1</sup> "In" or "at" before the name of a town is not translated by a separate word. The town name is put in the ablative, unless it is of the first or second declension *and singular*, when it is put in the genitive. So—Athenis (abl. of Athenae), "in Athens"; Carthagine (Carthago), "in Carthage"; Romae, "in Rome"; Tarenti, "in Tarentum."

6. *We* were slaves, *we* are masters.
7. In the morning *I* was in the woods, in the evening *I* shall be at home.
8. *I* shall be troublesome to your friend.
9. The leader's wound had been very severe.
10. Yesterday *I* was third; *I* had been first.

(215.)

1. Balbus et fuit, et est, et semper erit, fidissimus amicus.
2. Tui fuerunt labores, tuum erit praemium.
3. Optimus puer fueras: heri pigerrimus eras.
4. Vespare nos domi erimus, vos eritis in mari.
5. Sermo mercatoris facetissimus esse dicitur.
6. Rus aestivis mensibus quam urbs salubrius erit.
7. Minimus natu fratrum sapientissimus erit.
8. Naves jam milia passuum viginti a litore absunt.
9. Rebus in adversis gratissima erunt verba amicorum.
10. Marcus semper judex severissimus fuit, legumque fidissimus custos.
11. Quintus, puer improbus, flores in hortis publicis semper carpit.
12. Custodes puerum vident, et regem certiorem faciunt.

(216.)

1. Soldiers, you<sup>1</sup> had been in the enemy's camp!

<sup>1</sup> The pronouns which should be left out are no longer printed in *italics*. The endings of the verbs sufficiently express the person. A pronoun should not be used, unless there is particular emphasis, as in such a sentence as—I was at work, you were at play.

2. Marcus was the poorest of all the citizens.
3. You will have been tired with *your* long journey,  
my friends !
4. In all the battles we were very brave.
5. The fight was very spirited : the soldiers have been  
very brave.
6. The leader's plans will have been very useful to  
the army.
7. Consuls, you have been very useful to the com-  
monwealth !
8. We shall have been troublesome to the old man ;  
he will have been tired with the long conver-  
sation.
9. The harbour is twenty miles off from the city.
10. In the morning he reads his books ; in the even-  
ing he is in the garden.

## SECTION 79.

### THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

#### Ego, I.

##### Singular.

Nom. *Ego, I.*

Acc. *Me, me.*

Gen. *Mei, of me.*

Dat. *Mihi, to (or) for me.*

Abl. *Me, by (or) with me.*

##### Plural.

*Nōs, we.*

*Nos, us.*

*Nostri (and) nostrum, of us.*

*Nōbis, to (or) for us.*

*Nobis, by (or) with us.*

**Tu, you.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Tu, <i>thou (you).</i>	Vōs, <i>ye (you).</i>
Acc. Te, <i>thee (you).</i>	Vos, <i>you.</i>
Gen. Tui, <i>of thee (you).</i>	Vestri (and) <i>vestrum.</i>
Dat. Tibi, <i>to (or) for thee (you).</i>	Vōbis, <i>to (or) for you.</i>
Abl. Te, <i>by (or) with thee (you).</i>	Vobis, <i>by (or) with you.</i>

**REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.***Singular and Plural.*

Nom. (None.)	
Acc. Se, <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>	
Gen. Sui, <i>of</i>	,
Dat. Sibi, <i>to (or) for</i>	,
Abl. Se, <i>by</i>	,

(217.)

1. Tibi iter saluberrimum erit.
2. Sermones puerorum mihi molestissimi fuerunt.
3. Nobis sunt centum libri, vobis librorum duo milia.
4. Pater cotidie domum vespere redit.
5. Marcus semper se laudat, sed me semper culpat.
6. Vos nunquam nostri immemores eritis, amici carissimi
7. Pars utilissima nostri manus est.
8. Nos vestri immemores nunquam fuimus.
9. Pauci vestrum reipublicae utilissimi erant.
10. Amici immemores nostri rebus in adversis fuere.

11. Pars vestrum<sup>1</sup> ducem laudat, pars culpat.
12. Hominibus dies mortis non est notus.

## (218.)

1. You are never mindful of me, Balbus !
2. Your father, boy, gives you very beautiful books !
3. Our slaves are dear to us, but our friends are dearer.
4. We are boys, you are old men.
5. Your letter, brother, was very welcome to me!
6. The mind is the better part of us.
7. To many of us is the prison known.
8. Your son is never praised by you.
9. When will the poet's song be known to you, boy ?
10. Water will be better for you than wine, my sister !

## (219.)

1. Puer se in aqua videt.
2. Boni viri miseric semper adsunt.
3. Nos semper amicis aderamus, vobis amici nunquam.
4. Orator civibus pauperibus semper adest : bonus vir est et sui immemor.
5. Tibi versus facillimi sunt, mihi difficillimi.
6. Vobis nomina omnium amicorum meorum nota sunt.
7. Magister versus omnium vestrum vespere legit.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used (and not *nostrī*, *vestrī*) after *pars* (meaning "some"), *pauci*, *multi*, and such words.

8. Semper tui memor ero: mei tu semper memor fuisti.
9. Frater tuus duobus annis quam tu major natu est.
10. Rustica vita a te, urbana a me, laudatur.
11. Tibi omnia sunt, sed ego sum pauperrimus.
12. Quid vos terret, puellae? ego vobis brevi tempore adero.
13. Marcus sui nunquam immemor est, tui saepissime.
14. Servi dominum de adventu tuo jam certiorem faciunt.

## (220.)

1. The girls adorn themselves with flowers.
2. Marcus is now building a house for himself.
3. The boys are always mindful of themselves.
4. Julia is praised by you, Cornelia by me.
5. The Germans were better in war than the Gauls.
6. The orations of Cicero always delight us.
7. There is not, Quintus, a better poet than you!
8. Our friends are never unmindful of us.
9. In the morning the girls adorn their dresses, but in the evening they read books.
10. My slaves have always been very faithful to me.
11. I always assist my friends.
12. My brother will always assist me.

## SECTION 80.

PRONOUNS—(*Continued*).**Hic**, *this*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Hic	haec	hoc.	Hi	hae	haec.
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hoc.	Hos	has	haec.
Gen.	Hujus	hujus	hujus.	Horum	harum	horum.
Dat.	Huic	huic	huic.	His	his	his.
Abl.	Hoc	hac	hoc.	His	his	his.

**Ille**, *that*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Ille	illä	illud.	Illi	illae	illä.
Acc.	Illum	illam	illud.	Illos	illas	illä.
Gen.	Illius	illius	illius.	Illorum	illarum	illorum.
Dat.	Illi	illi	illi.	Illis	illis	illis.
Abl.	Ilo	illä	illo.	Illis	illis	illis.

(221.)

1. Hic puer dives, ille pauper est.
2. Illi pauperi seni rex multam pecuniam dat.
3. Hic pons longior, ille major est.
4. Haec vallis quam illa salubrior esse dicitur.
5. Hic quam ille multo divitior est.
6. Tibi tui, mihi mei, flores pulcherrimi sunt.

7. Illo die Romani hostibus in bello meliores fuerunt.
8. Hunc puerum laudat magister, illum culpat.
9. Hoc sinistra, illud dextra, manu portat.
10. Hae res certae, illae incertae, erant.
11. Haec avis semper, illa nunquam, canit.
12. Hi nunquam, illi semper, in aes alienum incidunt.
13. Quando domi eris?—Vespere semper sun domi.
14. Sapientia divitiis multis partibus<sup>1</sup> melior est.
15. Hic versus, Balbe, facillimus, ille difficillimus est!

## (222.)

## A.

1. This bread is dry.
2. This treaty was firm.
3. This cloud had been very black.
4. I often assisted that boy.
5. The courage of this man was known.
6. The father reads this book.
7. I am satisfied with this work.
8. The girl gathers these flowers.
9. He praises these flowers.
10. You are richer than these men.
11. These mountains are very high.
12. What is sweeter than this voice?
13. The girl loves this dress.
14. He praises a part of these flocks.
15. These seas will be known to the sailors.
16. I am known to this woman.

<sup>1</sup> *Multis partibus*, “by many degrees,” “a great deal.”

17. These marshes were already dry.
18. This house was mine.
19. You will be tired, friends, with these burdens !
20. He praises this shore.

## B.

1. That conversation was witty.
2. That weight had been very heavy.
3. The leaves of that oak are very beautiful.
4. That state has very good laws.
5. The leader praises that horseman.
6. I shall never assist that man.
7. He gives wine to those old men.
8. Those hills were steep.
9. He carries those burdens.
10. He praises those crops.
11. The wind drives that ship.
12. I am known by that name.
13. He despises those labours.
14. Those rooms were very large.
15. He gives that poem to the queen.
16. They pay part of those taxes.
17. What is sadder than those nights ?
18. I am satisfied with that picture.
19. He praises the diligence of those girls.
20. The end of that day was sad.

## C.

1. These old men are rich.
2. Those laws were strict.

3. I am richer than this boy.
4. Those spurs are very sharp.
5. I am welcome to that merchant.
6. This wound will be very severe.
7. The manners of this *man* are very bad.
8. The soldiers are praised by that leader.
9. A part of these mountains is known to me.
10. The name of that poet was celebrated.
11. He will have been satisfied with these things.
12. The brother is unlike (to) that girl.
13. That work will be very difficult.
14. The men of those times were very rich.
15. He fears these animals.
16. Those shouts frighten the mother.
17. Marcus is loved by that girl.
18. The characters of these tribes are like.
19. The old man will assist these young men.
20. This district is known to the thieves.

## (223.)

1. Hic semper nostri memor est, ille nunquam.
2. Hujus virtus, illius divitiae ab omnibus laudantur.
3. Multi vestrum semper fuerunt immemores nostri.
4. Hannibal et Scipio clarissimi duces fuerunt: hic Romanus, ille Carthaginiensis fuit.
5. Hoc latus centum viginti pedes longum est, illud pedes ducentos.
6. Marcus et Quintus fratres fuerunt: ille ("the former," *i.e.* Marcus) quam hic paucis annis natu major fuit.

7. Hic semper, ille nunquam, vectigalia in tempore pendit.
8. Carmina a nobis, orationes a vobis laudantur.
9. Servus dominum de adventu meo jam certiorem facit.
10. Variae frondes illius quercus autumno pulcherrimae erant.
11. Rex anno regni vicesimo quarto maximos et pulcherrimos hortos civibus dat.
12. Dissimillimi sunt duorum puerorum mores : hic fortis est, ille omnia timet.
13. Tibi amici rebus in adversis semper aderunt : amicorum semper memor es.
14. Ubi sunt Marcus et Quintus ?—Hic in horto, ille in silva est.
15. Rex vetere exercitu contentus est, et suepissime egregiam ducis virtutem laudat.

## (224.)

1. These verses are better than those.
2. This verse has six, that has five feet.
3. These old men always praise the manners of those times.
4. This tree is an oak, that is a beech.
5. The mother gives this book to you, that to your brother.
6. This burden is heavier than that.
7. Country life is praised by this man, town life by that.
8. The girl gives bread to the birds every day.
9. This *man* is very rich, that *man* is very poor.

10. This *man's* songs, that *man's* orations, are praised.
11. That tree is higher than this by twenty feet.
12. This wood is eighteen miles away from the city.

## XV.

### An Account of the Battle of Bannockburn.

Rex noster, piger homo et corporis voluptatibus deditus, tandem, crebris nostrorum cladibus commotus, exercitum comparat, et in fines hostium iter facit. Rex hostium, simul atque adventum nostrorum intellegit, locum deligit suis opportunitum, nostris iniquissimum. Suos enim in humo sicca firmaque collocat; frontem tamen tergumque agminis continententes paludes cingunt. Sinistra flumen erat, dextra castellum, colle praeceps impositum. Et, quod nostri equitibus praestant, crebras in palude foveas facit. Solum enim effudit, et insuper longuriis cratibusque sternit: tum humum gramineaque injicit. Calones omnes servosque equitum post vicinum collem collocat. Tum adventum nostrorum exspectat.

## XVI.

### Bannockburn—(*Continued*).

Nostri tandem sub vesperum adveniunt. Noctem non quieti somnoque sed carminibus epulisque dant. Contra hostes silentio opem divinam precibus implorant. Postero die dux hostium suos talibus verbis ad pugnam incitat. “Milites! certamen nobis hodie pro liberis et uxoribus, pro parentibus et patria, est. Deus nobis aut victoriam aut mortem gloriosam dat. Si cui vita gloria carior est, domum ex pugna excedat!” Tum pugna committitur. Primo

pedites sagittarii nostri in aciem inducuntur; sed equites hostium, incitatis equis, irruunt; et summa audacia nostros gladiis hastisque confodiunt: nihil enim sagittarii præter arcus habent. Deinde equites nostri submittuntur; sed plerique, insidiarum ignari, in foveas proni incidunt. Nostris conturbatis, subito calones servique equitum in summo colle apparent. Nostri autem, "En, novus exercitus adest!" clamantes, terga vertunt, et fugā salutem petunt.

## SECTION 81.

### PRONOUNS—(*Continued*).

*Is, that, or he, she, it.*

#### *Singular.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Is	eā	id.
Acc.	Eum	eam	id.
Gen.	Ejus	ejus	.ejus.
Dat.	Ei	ei	ei.
Abl.	Eo	eā	eo.

#### *Plural.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Ii	eac	eā.
Acc.	Eos	eas	eā.
Gen.	Eorum	earum	eorum.
Dat.			Iis.
Abl.			

*Idem, the same.*

#### *Singular.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Ídem	eādem	ídem.
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	ídem.
Gen.	Ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem.
Dat.	Eideñ	eidem	eidem.
Abl.	Eodem	eādem	eodem.

*Plural.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Idem	eadem	eādem.
Acc.	Eosdem	easdem	eādem.
Gen.	Eorundem	earundem	eorundem.
Dat. & Abl.		Isdem.	

## (225.)

1. *Huic divitiae caraे sunt, ille eas contemnit.*
2. *Dominus servos suos ad urbem vespere mittit.*
3. *“Imber” et “pes” ejusdem generis sunt.*
4. *Mors omniibus hominibus eadem est.*
5. *Cornelia ejus<sup>1</sup>-que frater saepe domum meam veniunt.*
6. *Hi pueri suos versus laudant, meos contemnunt.*
7. *Pueri et senem et consilia ejus contemnunt.*
8. *Non idem semper floribus color est.*
9. *Caesar in fines hostium venit, eorumque agros vastat.*
10. *Hae nayes jam milia passuum septendecim a portu absunt.*
11. *Marcus magnam sibi domum aedificat, eamque omnibus rebus ornat (furnishes).*
12. *Galli ad Caesarem legatos mittunt, eumque de suis rebus certiorem faciunt.*

## (226.)

1. Where are my letters?—The slaves have them.
2. This bird always sings the same songs.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, “and the brother of her,”—that is, “and her brother.”

3. Young men and old men do not praise the same things.
4. The soldiers make a charge on (*in*, with acc.) the enemy, and overcome them.
5. Where is your brother? your father is always calling him.
6. Your plans are not always the same.
7. Those orators always praise themselves and their own orations.
8. These *things* are dear to you, those *things* to us.
9. Those girls always have the same dresses.
10. Where is Marcus? He is said to be a very good boy to-day.

(227.)

1. Virtus omnibus eadem est, eadem sapientia.
2. Caesar egregiam suorum virtutem laudat.
3. Illi oratores suas orationes semper laudant, Ciceronis idem<sup>1</sup> contemnunt.
4. Hic senex sapientissimus est, et idem dicitissimus.
5. Caesar in fines hostium venit, eosque primo impetu superat.
6. Hi milites opus summa celeritate conficiunt.
7. Ego vestri vestraeque summae virtutis nuncquam immemor ero.
8. Caesar vespere omnibus copiis flumen transit: eas non erat nota hostibus.

<sup>1</sup> Idem, lit. "the same men,"—that is, "and they." In the next sentence *et idem* can be translated "and also." In sentence 19 *eodem modo* means "and he too."

9. Plebs Romana consulem culpat, virtutemque ejus contemnit.
10. Quil consuli laude optimorum hominum gratius est?
11. Caesar ab urbe duo milia passuum abesse dicitur.
12. Legati ad castra veniunt: milites de adventu eorum Caesarem certiorem faciunt.
13. Hostes milia passuum viginti quattuor a nostris castris absunt.
14. Milites septimae legionis a Caesare laudantur.  
Quid militibus laudibus ducis sui gratius est?
15. Hi duo pueri eorundem morum esse a magistro dicuntur.
16. Hi milites Romam summa celeritate veniunt, illi in castris manent.
17. Rex conjugem suam laudat, eique auream coronam dat.
18. Marcus et Quintus semper eadem laudant, eadem culpant.
19. Quid vetere amico, eodemque sapientissimo, dulcius est?
20. Hic optimus orator, ille pessimus poeta, esse dicitur.

(228.)

1. The same *things* are not easy to all men.
2. Marcus loves *his* friends, and always assists them.
3. The Gauls send ambassadors to Caesar about peace.
4. The master praises the boy, and gives a beautiful book to him.
5. I have always been useful to you; you have often been useful to me.

6. Our army crosses the stream : the enemy's army does the same.
7. This leader crosses four streams in one day.
8. At that (*is*) time the Roman name was not known to the Gauls.
9. The father reads the works of Cicero ; he (*is*) was a very celebrated orator.
10. The queen is always the same : she always assists the poor.
11. The soldiers praise Caesar, and are always praised by him.
12. Marcus and his (*is*) brother come *to* Rome (acc.) in the evening.
13. The enemy's ambassadors come to Caesar at the same time.
14. There were many flowers in our garden, but our brothers are always gathering them.
15. At the same time the neighbouring states send ambassadors to Caesar.

## SECTION 82.

### PRONOUNS—(*Continued*).

#### *Ipse, self.*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Ipse	ipsă	ipsum.	Ipsi	ipsae	ipsă.
Acc.	Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum.	Ipsos	ipsas	ipsă.
Gen.	Ipsius	ipsius	ipsius.	Ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum.
Dat.	Ipsi	ipsi	ipsi.			Ipsis.
Abl.	Ipso	ipsă	ipso.			

**Iste, that of yours.**

*Singular.* *Plural.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Iste	istā	istud.	Isti	istae	istā.
Acc.	Istum	istam	istud.	Istos	istas	istā.
Gen.	Istius	istius	istius.	Istorum	istarum	istorum.
Dat.	Isti	isti	isti.			Istis.
Abl.	Isto	istā	isto.			

*Ipse* is an adjective; *se* (p. 167) is a noun:—

*a.* *Ipse* soror me laudat. *My sister herself praises me.*

*b.* Soror *se* laudat. *My sister praises herself.*

[*c.* *Ipse* librum legit. *He is reading the book himself. Se has no nominative.*]

(229.)

1. Quintus, clarissimus orator, pauperrimis civibus saepe adest.
2. *Ipse* dux se nunquam, milites suos semper, laudat.
3. Marcus, optimus vir, fratribus pecuniam saepe dat; *ipse* paucis rebus contentus est.
4. Maxima pars nostrum tres dies duasque noctes in silvis erat.
5. Neque ego pauperrimus sum, neque *ipse* tu ditissimus es.
6. Ubi sunt isti servi, mi frater? domi nunquam sunt.
7. Cives verbis ipsius regis non sunt contenti.
8. Hi pueri neque optimi neque pessimii sunt.
9. Ista oratio reipublicae non fuit utilissima.
10. Illa puella neque hunc neque illum librum legit.

11. Ipsorum fratribus Balbus saepe immemor est.
12. Ille juvenis neque mihi, amico suo, neque ipsi fratri adest.
13. Balbus neque maximus neque minimus iatru amicorum est.
14. Neque ipse venit, neque nos consiliorum suorum certiores facit.
15. Hi libri mei sunt, Balbe.—Quid! illi libri tui sunt!  
Homo improbissimus es; mei, non tui, sunt.

(230.)

1. The queen herself decorates the table with flowers every day.
2. Marcus himself is at home; Quintus, his brother, is in the city.
3. Rest is welcome sometimes to the masters themselves.
4. Those manners of yours, boy, will be welcome neither to *your* father nor *your* mother!
5. The king himself wounds the leader of the enemy.
6. That poet gives *his* verses to the queen herself.
7. The weight itself is very heavy.
8. This poet often praises his own verses.
9. That song of yours, Balbus, is the worst of all!
10. Those labours of yours are neither very severe nor very difficult.
11. The keeper of the gardens himself is present neither in the morning nor in the evening.
12. The ambassadors inform the king himself of their plan.

## SECTION 83.

PRONOUNS—(*Continued*).**Unus, one.**

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Unus	ună	unum.	Uni	unae	ună.
Acc. Unum	unam	unum.	Unos	unas	ună.
Gen. Unius	unius	unius.	Unorum	unarum	unorum.
Dat. <sup>1</sup> Uni	uni	uni.			Unis.
Abl. Uno	ună	uno.			

*Solus, totus, and nullus* are declined like *unus*.

**Alius, other.**

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Alius	aliă	aliud.	Alii	aliae	aliă.
Acc. Alium	aliam	aliud.	Alios	alias	aliă.
Gen. Alius	alius	alius.	Aliorum	aliorum	aliorum.
Dat. Alii	alii	alii.			Aliis.
Abl. Alio	aliă	alio.			

When *alius* is repeated in the sentence the first *alius* means "some," and the second "other." So *Alii regem, aliis reginam, culparunt* means "some blame the king, others the queen."

(231.)

1. Totam hiemem in Italia fui.

2. Sex menses totos milites in castris erant.
3. Aliud pueris, aliud senibus gratum est.
4. Pater ejus nullam a filia epistulam accipit.
5. Nulla in re amici mihi non aderunt.
6. Non me solum, sed ipsum etiam se, culpat.
7. Sui sibi, mihi mei, libri grati sunt.
8. Alii in castris manent, alios Caesar in fines hostium ducit.
9. Solum unum hoc culpat magister.
10. Alius virtutem, alias sapientiam, regis et reginae laudat.
11. Alia de causa Marcum, alia Quintum, culpat.
12. Nobis neque naves erant aliae, neque milites alii.

## (232.)

1. The cavalry come into the territory of the enemy by another route (*iter*).
2. The courage of one man was very useful to the commonwealth.
3. That orator was known to the whole State.
4. He praises the extraordinary courage of the whole army.
5. No poet makes better verses.
6. I alone assisted that boy.
7. The whole prison is known to those thieves.
8. The songs of no poet are better than yours.
9. The Senones and other states of Gaul send ambassadors to Caesar.
10. In the whole of Italy the cold had been very great.

## (233.)

1. Nullius labores quam mei majores sunt.
2. His de causis longe aliud consilium capit.
3. Alia ex parte hostes in agmen nostrum incident.
4. Neque hic meis, neque tuis ille, versibus contentus erat.
5. Legionem octavam totam hiemem in castris habet.
6. Mea sola domus tota urbe salubris esse dicitur.
7. Totius anni vectigalia maxima erunt.
8. Caesar copias hoc itinere ducit: aliud iter habet nullum.
9. Totae copiae regiae in nostros equites incident.
10. Ista verba neque patri neque magistro grata erunt.
11. Non magistro solum, sed etiam patri, isti mores molesti sunt.
12. Solus hic neque regem neque ipsam reginam timet.
13. Toto orbe terrarum virtus militum nostrorum nota est.
14. Alii hoc, alii illud, opus conficiunt.
15. His de causis non cibis solum, sed etiam militibus, rex carus est.

## (234.)

1. This *man* often praises himself, others never.
2. Marcus and other boys frighten their sister by *their* shouts.
3. Caesar leads all his forces into the territories of the Gauls.

4. Books alone delight that old man.
5. Neither in winter nor in summer shall I be away from home.
6. That law of yours will be welcome neither to rich nor to poor.
7. Some come to the harbour, others remain in the city.
8. Country life charms some people, city *life* others.
9. Your plans are known not to the commons only, but to all the citizens also.
10. Not to me alone, but to the whole state, is the king dear.
11. The one route was very easy, the other very difficult.
12. The soldiers finish the whole march with the utmost speed.

## SECTION 84.

PRONOUNS—(*Continued*).

*Uter, which of two.*

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Nom.	Uter	utrā	utrum.	Utri	utrac	utrā.
Acc.	Utrum	utram	utrum.	Utros	utras	utrā.
Gen.	Utrīus	utrius	utrius.	Utrorum	utrarum	utrorum.
Dat.	Utri	utri	utri.			
Abl.	Utro	utrā	utro.		Utris.	

*Alter, the other of two.**Singular.**Plural.*

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
----	----	----	----	----	----

N. Alter	altērā	alterum.	Alteri	alterae	alterā.
----------	--------	----------	--------	---------	---------

A. Alterum	alteram	alterum.	Alteros	alteras	alterā.
------------	---------	----------	---------	---------	---------

G. Alterūs	alterius	alterius.	Alterorum	alterarum	alterorum.
------------	----------	-----------	-----------	-----------	------------

D. Alteri	alteri	alteri.			
-----------	--------	---------	--	--	--

A. Altero	alterā	altero.	Alteris.		
-----------	--------	---------	----------	--	--

*Alius, another (other).*

*Alter, the other (of two).*

*Cetēri, the others, the rest.*

## (235.)

1. Rex Agesilaus altero pede claudus erat.
2. Alteram ex duabus legionibus Caesar castris educit.
3. Consulum alter copias educit, alter in urbe manet.
4. Anno centesimo altero Galli agros Romanos vasant.
5. Hic nihil alterius causa facit.
6. Uter consulum plebi carior est ?
7. Marcus et Quintus domum redeunt ; ceteri pueri in urbe manent.
8. Alios vita rustica, alios urbana vita delectat.
9. Finitimae civitates pacem a Caesare petunt.
10. Auxilium magistri pigro puero gratissimum est.
11. Illi pueri quam ceteri natu majores sunt.
12. Una solum civitas auxilium a Caesare petit.

## (236.)

1. The old man is deaf *in* one (*alter*) ear.
2. Of the two boys the one is twelve, -the other sixteen, years old.
3. The Senōnes and other states lead out their forces from the camp.
4. The brigands fear both (*et*) these and other laws.
5. The master blames Marcus and the other boys.
6. All the rest fall into the water.
7. Which of us does the better verses ?
8. To which of you *two* does *your* father give a reward ?
9. Caesar leads out the infantry forces from the camp.
10. This city has no harbour.

## (237.)

1. Haec silva totius Galliae maxima est.
2. Praedones totum hoc litus incolunt.
3. Utra sororum pulchrior est? — Julia Cornelia multo pulchrior esse dicitur.
4. Hic dux non exercitui solum, sed toti etiam civitati, carus est.
5. Primo exercitus nostri adventu hostes ad Caesarem legatos de pace mittunt.
6. Hostes ad Caesarem legatos mittunt, pacemque ab eo petunt.
7. Treveri omnes copias castris educunt; ceterae civitates domi manent.

8. His de causis alterum puerum laudat, alia de causa alterum culpat.
9. Utri amicorum major diligentia est ?
10. Alii auxilium petunt, alii opus ipsi conficiunt.
11. Pars militum in castris manet; ceteras copias omnes Caesar mane educit.
12. Balbus saepissime domum meam venit: is filius alter Marci, veteriimi amici mei, est.

## (238.)

1. The Indus is the largest (masc.) of all streams.
2. This day was by far the most severe for our *men*.
3. "Sanguis" and "messis" are not of the same gender.
4. To which of the *two* brothers does he give the greater praise ?
5. One of the sons is very like to his father, the other is very unlike.
6. Your help will be very welcome to the other of the two boys.
7. The leaders ask for help from the king.
8. The Britains in all *their* wars send auxiliary troops into Gaul.
9. This good boy is never unmindful of his neighbour (*alter*).
10. Not oaks only, but many trees also of all kinds, are in the public gardens.

## XVII.

## Ulysses in Polyphemus' Cave.—I.

Graeci post excidium Trojae in patriam revertunt. In his erat Ulixes. Multum ille errat, multas terras videt, multa maria transit. Primo anno cum duodecim comitibus in Siciliam insulam vēnit. Siciliam autem illo tempore non homines, sed feri gigantes, habitabant. Cyclōpes corum nomen erat. Haec res Ulixi non nota est. Ulixes igitur et comites ejus ad specum Polyphēmi veniunt. Is ferocissimus omnium Cyclopum est, idemque ceteris corpore ingentior: unum modo oculum in media fronte habet. In specu, igitur, Graeci lac et caseos laeti inveniunt. Ipse autem non adest, sed oves in montibus pascit. Brevi tempore ipse Polyphemus ad specum cum ovibus revertit. Primum maximo atque gravissimo saxo januam specus claudit. Deinde oves mulget, et lignis ignem facit. Tum demum Ulixem duodecimque ejus comites conspicit.

## SECTION 85.

THE PRONOUNS—(*Continued*).*The Relative Pronoun.**Singular:*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
Nom.	Qui	quae	quod	<i>who, which.</i>
Acc.	Quem	quam	quod	<i>whom, which.</i>
Gen.	Cujus	cujus	cujus	<i>whose, of which.</i>
Dat.	Cui	cui	cui	<i>to whom, to which.</i>
Abl.	Quo	quā	quo	<i>by whom, by which.</i>

*Plural.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
Nom.	Qui	quae	quae	<i>who, which.</i>
Acc.	Quos	quas	quae	<i>who, which.</i>
Gen.	Quorum	quarum	quorum	<i>whose, of which.</i>
Dat. & Abl.		Quibus		<i>to whom, to which.</i>

(239.)

1. Onus; quod frater tuus portat, gravissimum est.
2. Servi, quorum dominus mortuus est, tristissimi sunt.
3. Aqua fontium, qui hunc pontem ornant, gelidissima est.
4. Qui omnes laudat, ipse ab omnibus laudatur.
5. Auxilia, quae dux petit, brevi tempore aderunt.
6. Pars eruptionem facit, ceteri in castris manent.
7. Labores, quos illi milites conficiunt, gravissimi fuerunt.
8. Pons, quem nostri milites faciunt, ducentos pedes longus erit.
9. Versus, quos puer facit, difficillimi sunt.
10. Fulgura, quae puerum terrent, nautae contemnunt.
11. Quibus de causis milites Caesarein certiore faciunt.
12. Non is beatus est, cuius divitiae magnae sunt, sed qui suis rebus contentus est.

(240.)

1. This is the girl, to whom *her* mother gives a reward.

2. This is the poet, whose works all men are reading.
3. This is the young man, whose voice all *men* praise.
4. All *men* praise those (*is*), by whom they are praised.
5. He (*is*) is not the happiest *man*, whose riches are greatest.
6. This boy, whose father was consul, will himself be consul.
7. The orator praises those *men*, by whom he is himself praised.
8. The wise *man* does not praise those (*is*), to whom money is dearer than wisdom.
9. All men love those, by whom they are loved.
10. That soldier is dead, whose courage all men praise.

## (241.)

1. Hi lapides, quos pueri jaciunt, acutissimi sunt.
2. Vesperi greges, qui in collibus sunt, domum redeunt.
3. Caesar prima aestate quattuor legiones in Britanniam dicit.
4. Caesar prima luce equites omnes castris educit.
5. Caesar equites ceterasque copias in castra vespero reducit.
6. Ego nunquam eorum immemor ero, qui mihi rebus in adversis aderant.
7. Nostri omnibus portis eruptionem faciunt, ordinisque hostium turbant.
8. Non ii semper optimi milites sunt, quorum verba fortissima fuerunt.
9. Non divitiae beatum faciunt, sed sapientia sola.

10. Caesar cum omnibus suis auxiliorumque copiis in fines hostium venit.
11. Duo itinera erant, quorum unum breve et idem difficillimum erat, alterum longum sed facillimum erat.
12. Una ex parte flumen latissimum, altera ex parte mons altissimus, tertia silvac densissimae erant.

## (242.)

1. This is the king, whom all praise.
2. The commons praise the leader, whom the king blames.
3. These boys, whom the master always blames, are very sad.
4. The man (*is*), who is always praising you, is not a true friend.
5. Of the consuls the one is the braver, the other the wiser.
6. The men, who inhabit this district of the city, are very poor.
7. The cavalry make a sally from two gates.
8. The ships, which are coming into harbour, are very big.
9. The waves, which drive the ships into harbour, are very big.
10. Caesar leads back his forces into camp in the evening.

## SECTION 86.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*Present Tense.****Amāre, to love.****Singular.*

1. Amo, *I love.*
2. Amas, *you love.*
3. Amat, *he loves.*

*Plural.*

1. Amāmus, *we love.*
2. Amātis, *you love.*
3. Amant, *they love.*

To this conjugation belong all the verbs whose third person singular ends in *-at*. Those already in use are:—

aedificare	incitare	superare.
circumdare <sup>1</sup>	laudare	turbare.
collocare	oppugnare	vastare.
culpare	ornare	vocare.
dare <sup>1</sup>	portare	vulnerare.
delectare	siccare.	

Nonne me amas? *Do you not love me?*Num me amas? *You do not love me, do you?*

(243.)

1. Cotidie, domine, mensam tuam orno. Num me culpas?
2. Hominem pauperem aere alieno libero.
3. Quid! num tu me, veterimum amicum, culpas?
4. Frustra pueros ad majorem diligentiam incitainus.

<sup>1</sup> These two verbs form their perfects differently from *amare*.

5. Auxilium, quod hic petit, illi molestissimum est.
6. Gravissimum onus porto, neque<sup>1</sup> fessus sum.
7. Nonne nos, qui vobis semper fidissimi fuimus,  
laudatis?
8. Ego patris epistulas exspecto: quid tu, Balbe,  
exspectas?
9. Non ii semper, quos nunquam magister culpat,  
optimi pueri sunt.
10. Legati totius Galliae ad Caesarem veniunt, et pacem  
de eo petunt.
11. Tu, Dave, cur tu solus nunquam mensam ornas?  
ceteri servi cotidie ornant.
12. Quid! num vos hostium adventum exspectatis?
13. Uni ex omnibus Sequāni nihil earum rerum faciunt,  
quas ceteri faciunt.
14. Nostri crebras eruptiones faciunt, neque ordines  
hostium turbant.
15. Non eum beatum voco, cui maxima divitiae sunt,  
sed qui sapientissimus est.

(244.)

1. I give bread to the little birds every day.
2. Unhappy slave, you are carrying a very heavy  
burden!
3. We all love *our* brothers and sisters.
4. Boys, do you not love *your* father and mother?
5. Slaves, we neither praise you nor blame *you*.
6. I am awaiting the arrival of Caesar and the legions.

<sup>1</sup> *Neque* here is equivalent to *et non*, “and (yet) I am not.”

7. Soldiers, you are not, are you, awaiting the coming of the enemy?
8. The burden, which I am carrying, is very heavy.
9. Do I not often praise the boy's diligence?
10. I praise those who praise me. You do not blame me, do you?

## SECTION 87.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*Future Tense.*

*Singular.*

1. Amābo, *I shall love.*
2. Amābis, *you will love.*
3. Amābit, *he will love.*

*Plural.*

1. Amābimus, *we shall love.*
2. Amābitis, *you will love.*
3. Amābunt, *they will love.*

(245.)

1. Tibi dabo duos pulcherrimos libros. Quid tu mihi dabis?
2. Primo vere rex sibi maximam domum aedificabit.
3. Nonne eos laudabis, qui patres et matres amant et fovent?
4. Quis istos mores laudabit? Neque mater neque pater laudabunt.
5. Milites nostri non has solum, sed maiores etiam copias, aliquando fugabunt.
6. Omnia civium Quintus divitissimus esse dicitur.
7. Quis te, qui alios nunquam laudas, laudabit.

8. Nihil aliud quam<sup>1</sup> animos civium ad bellum incitas!
9. Num tu laudabis hominem, cuius pestimi mores omnibus noti sunt?
10. Nonne, milites, hostes superabitis?—Nihil aliud quam hostes fugamus.
11. Dux omnes, quas habet copias, in collibus collecabit.
12. Laudo non puerum solum, sed patrem etiam magistrosque.
13. Hoc foedus, quod cum hostibus faciunt, regem nostrum delectabit.
14. Uter fratrum divitior esse dicitur?—Balbus non divitior solum, sed etiam sapientior est.
15. Quas copias mane Caesar castris educit, vespere ad castra reducit.
16. Legiones, quas Labienus habet, septima et nona sunt.
17. Omnibus foedus, quod Caesar cum hostibus facit, aliquando gratum erit.
18. Equites omnibus portis eruptionem faciunt, et hostes, quorum magni clamores cives terrent, fundunt fugantque.

(246.)

1. To you, my dearest sister, I will give all these flowers!
2. The tenth legion will surround the camp with a rampart.

<sup>1</sup> You do nothing but, etc.

3. We shall give to-morrow two golden cups to *our* father.
4. The soldiers rout and put to flight the large forces of the enemy.
5. The boys will await *their* father's arrival.
6. You will not, will you, blame me? I never blame you.
7. You do not, do you, praise the manners of this man?
8. Balbus, who now is poor, will one day be very rich.—Who is Balbus?
9. Will you not one day blame the friend, whom you now praise?
10. Your father will one day set you free from debt.
11. The ambassador, whose arrival they are awaiting, is already in the camp.
12. The forces of the enemy will one day put to flight the Romans.

## SECTION 88.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION—(*Continued*)

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*Imperfect Tense.*

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

1. Amābam, <i>I was loving.</i>	1. Amābāmus, <i>we were loving.</i>
2. Amābas, <i>you were loving.</i>	2. Amābātis, <i>you were loving.</i>
3. Amābat, <i>he was loving.</i>	3. Amābant, <i>they were loving.</i>

(247.)

1. Dux hostium urbem nostram altissimo aggere circumlabat.
2. Et amo te, mea mater carissima, et semper amabo.
3. Magister me heri culpabat, hodie laudat ; num eras iterum culpabit ?
4. Cotidie avibus panem dabat : nunc earum immemor est.
5. Duos menses totos hanc epistulam exspectabam.
6. Nonne te verba magistri aliquando ad majorem diligentiam incitabunt ?
7. Caesar tres solum noctis horas exercitui ad (for) quietem dabat.
8. Hoc gravissimum onus portabam, neque fessus eram.
9. Hae naves tria milia equitum portabant.
10. Naves, quae milites portabant, omnes terrain capiunt.<sup>1</sup>
11. Ubi est ille servus, qui onus portabat ?
12. Quid amico tuo dabas ?—Quattuor libros et unum calicem dabam.
13. Helvetii obsides accipiunt, non dant.
14. Fratrem meum magnis clamoribus vocabam : num surdus est ?
15. Equites nostri copias hostium pedestres fundunt fugantque, et collem occupant.
16. Nonne me vocabatis, amici ?—Nemo te vocabat. Ubi fuisti ?

<sup>1</sup> “Reach the land,” “make the land.”

17. Caesar copias suas obsidesque ad mare reducit.
18. Tertio die magnam totius operis partem conficiunt.

(248.)

1. Who is calling me ?—No one was calling you.
2. Our men were throwing the first ranks of the enemy into confusion.
3. The neighbouring states were giving hostages to Caesar.
4. Were you not awaiting me, Quintus ?
5. I was not, was I, Balbus and Quintus, urging you to war ?
6. The master was praising me yesterday : he will blame *me* to-day.
7. I shall not blame those who were always praising me.
8. Soldiers, will you not seize the mountain ?
9. We were praising the slaves, who were always faithful.
10. No one was setting the poor man free from debt.
11. To-day you blame one *person*, yesterday you were blaming another.
12. You were praising a boy, whose character everybody blames.

## SECTION 89.

## VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.—*Perfect Tense.**Singular.*

1. Amāvi, *I have loved, I loved.*
2. Amāvisti, *you have loved, you loved.*
3. Amāvit, *he has loved, he loved.*

*Plural.*

1. Amāvimus, *we have loved, we loved.*
2. Amāvistis, *you have loved, you loved.*
3. Amāvērunt } *they have loved, they loved.*  
Amāvēre }

(249.)

1. Themistocles Graeciam magno periculo liberavit.
2. Puerūn neque ego laudavi neque tu culpavisti.
3. Hostes magnam urbis partem occupavere.
4. Nemo nos exspectavit; omnes nostri immemores fuitis.
5. Galli legatos mittunt, pacém petunt, obsides dant.
6. Bonum fuit consilium tuum; magnum periculum vitavimus.
7. Hic fortissimus miles decem hostes sua manu vulneravit.
8. Consules duo milia militum in summo monte collocaverunt.

9. Caesar legatos, qui ad eum veniunt, de his rebus certiores facit.
10. Quintus ad me, quos habet optimos libros, mittit.
11. Urbem occupaverunt, quae quadraginta milia passuum a finibus suis aberat.
12. Hostes nihil aliud quam lapides in nostros jaciunt.
13. Hic regnum in sua civitate occupavit, neque murmura vulgi timet.
14. Rex triginta duos annos natus mortuus est; paucos solum menses regnavit.
15. Qui fortiter pugnaverunt milites, fortiter pugnabunt.
16. Non solum hostes superavistis, milites, sed etiam cives magno periculo liberavistis.
17. Neque te heri laudabam, puer, neque hodie laudavi.  
Nihil te ad maiorem diligentiam incitat?
18. Consulum alter copias hostium pedestres fundit  
fugatque, alter equites superat.

(250.)

1. This king has reigned for one and twenty years (acc.)
2. I have always loved you, my mother, and will always love you.
3. What! have you not defeated the enemy, soldiers?
4. The enemy fought with extreme courage.
5. They see the ships, which have carried the soldiers.
6. Have we not set you free from a great danger?
7. You have avoided great dangers, boys!
8. Those are happy, who have avoided every danger.
9. You have not only fought bravely, but you have defeated the enemy.

10. The soldiers have seized the enemy's camp.
11. Caesar leads back the soldiers, of whom he has a large number, to the sea.
12. The Roman soldiers used to carry (imperfect) heavy burdens on the march.

## SECTION 90.

### VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. *Future Perfect Tense.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Amāvēro, <i>I shall have loved.</i>	1. Amāvērīmus, <i>we shall have loved.</i>
2. Amāvēris, <i>you will have loved.</i>	2. Amāvērītis, <i>you will have loved.</i>
3. Amāvērit, <i>he will have loved.</i>	3. Amāvērint, <i>they will have loved.</i>

##### 2. *Pluperfect Tense.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Amāvēram, <i>I had loved.</i>	1. Amāvērāmus, <i>we had loved.</i>
2. Amāvēras, <i>you had loved.</i>	2. Amāvērātis, <i>you had loved.</i>
3. Amāvērat, <i>he had loved.</i>	3. Amāvērant, <i>they had loved.</i>

(251.)

1. Nonne majus onus quam tu portayero ?
2. Nonne ingentem navium numerum aedificaveris ?
3. Nemo majora pericula vitaverit, nemo fortior fuerit.
4. Regum alter hostes superaverit, alter cives liberaverit.
5. Brevi tempore totam urbem occupaverimus.
6. Rex et regina quatuor annos regnaverint.
7. Tua vox, O puella, aures nostras saepe delectaverat !
8. Tu milites culpabas, quorum ego virtutem saepe laudaveram.
9. Num agros nostros vastaveras ?—Vastaveram.
10. Nonne auxilia omnia in sinistro latere collocaverat ?
11. Culpaverunt eos, qui cives ad bella incitaverant.
12. Milites classem centum navium summa celeritate aedificaverant.
13. Nonne optimum virum et fortissimum civem culpaveris ?
14. Rex milites laudabat, qui fortissime pugnaverant.
15. Rex, vir sapientissimus, cives suos maximo periculo liberaverit.
16. Et patrem et matrem pueri semper amaverant.
17. Nonne nostri milites omnes hostium copias superaverint ?
18. Adventus tuus fratribus, qui te exspectabant, gratissimus fuerit !
19. Fortiter pugnavistis, milites ! magno periculo nos liberaveritis !

20. Vulneraverunt legatos, quam rem nemo bonus laudat.

(252.)

1. I had avoided a great danger.
2. The king had reigned for fifty years.
3. The soldiers had built twelve war-ships.
4. In a short time I shall have decorated the table.
5. Your letter, Alexander, will have delighted *your* father !
6. In a short time our men will have overcome the enemy.
7. The soldiers had built a fleet of two hundred ships.
8. You will have fought very bravely, soldiers.
9. You will have reigned for twenty-five years.
10. The slaves, who had carried the burden, were tired.
11. The burdens, which the slaves had carried, were very heavy.
12. They were praising the soldiers, who had thrown the ranks of the enemy into confusion.
13. They have blamed those, who had wounded the ambassadors.
14. I will praise those, who shall have been the bravest.

## SECTION 91.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION—(Continued).

Parts of the Imperative and Infinitive Moods.

*Imperative Mood.*

*Ama*, *love thou, love.*

*Amāte*, *love ye, love.*

*Ama*, is used when you speak to one person,  
*Amate*, when you speak to more than one person.

*Infinitive Mood.*

*Present.*

*Perfect.*

*Amāre*, *to love.*

*Amāvisse*, *to have loved.*

(253.)

1. *Ama fratres, Quinte! Quid est dulcius quam fratres amare?*
2. *Ornate mensam floribus!—Nihil aliud quam mensam ornant.*
3. *Fugate equites, milites!—Nihil difficilius est quam hos fugare equites.*
4. *Vitate, pueri, hoc periculum!—Quis potest omnia pericula vitare?*
5. *Da mihi panem et aquam, frater; itinere fessus sum.*
6. *Quid est pulchrius, milites, quam hostes superavisse?*
7. *Servos cotidie floribus mensam reginae ornare jubet.*

8. Vocate, consules, cives ad arma ! Hostes jam adsunt.
9. Hic juvenis sapientissimus esse dicitur. Num verum est ?
10. Quid est pulchrius quam civitatem magno periculo liberavisse ?
11. Caesar milites agros hostium vastare jubet.
12. Quis potest istos mores, puer, laudare ?
13. Ordines nostros turbare, hostes, difficillimum erit !
14. Quid molestius esse potest, quam hujus senis sermones ?
15. Magna laus<sup>1</sup> est hostem fugavisse, et urbem magno periculo liberavisse.

## (254.)

1. Love your mother, boy !
2. Lay waste the lands, soldiers
3. He is not able to praise you.
4. Carry this, slaves !
5. They are not able to carry it.
6. He orders the soldiers to fight.
7. Give me *some* wine, slave !
8. He orders me to give *him* wine.
9. Call your brother, Quintus !
10. Decorate the table with flowers, girl !
11. They are not able to fight.
12. Await your father, boys !
13. It is glorious to have overcome the enemy

<sup>1</sup> Laus, *glory*.

14. What is more glorious than to have put the enemy to flight?
15. What can be more glorious than to have wounded the leader?
16. Caesar orders the soldiers to surround the city with a rampart.
17. He orders the soldiers to await the enemy.
18. The enemy are not able to throw our ranks into confusion.

### XVIII.

#### Ulysses in Polyphemus' Cave.—II.

*[Translate again No. XVII., p. 190, before doing this.]*

Polyphemus statim Ulixem comitesque ejus interrogat, “Estis mercatores an praedones?” Gravis vox Cyclopis omnes magnopere terret. Respondet Ulixes “Gracci sumus: tempestas nos a cursu nostro in istam insulam dejicit. Nonne tu, qui magnus homo es et validissimus, nos, hospites tuos, ut mos est Graecorum, benigne tractabis? gratissimi in te erimus. Si tamen in nos crudelis fueris, dei, quibus hospites curae sunt, crudelitatem tuam vindicabunt.” Sed Polyphemus, ridens, “Dei vestri,” inquit, “me non terrent; ego enim et robustior et potentior multo sum, quam illi.” Tum duos comites Ulixis magna vi ad saxum jacit. Postquam membra eorum laceravit, cenam sibi parat; carnem et ossa humana devorat. “Quam me delectat,” exclamat, “horum Graecorum caro! undecim supersunt: multos dies praeclarissime cenabo.” Audiunt Graeci; gelidus sudor per membra manat.

## SECTION 92.

## VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses.

**Mönērē**, *to advise.*

## 1. Present.

*Singular.*

1. Mönēo, *I advise.*
2. Mönēs, *you advise.*
3. Mönēt, *he advises.*

*Plural.*

1. Mönēmus, *we advise.*
2. Mönētis, *you advise.*
3. Mönent, *they advise.*

## 2. Future.

*Singular.**Plural.*

1. Monēbo, *I shall advise.*
2. Monēbis, *you will advise.*
3. Monēbit, *he will advise.*

1. Monēbimus, *we shall advise.*
2. Monēbitis, *you will advise.*
3. Monēbunt, *they will advise.*

## 3. Imperfect.

*Singular.*

1. Monēbam, *I was advising.*
2. Monēbas, *you were advising.*
3. Monēbat, *he was advising.*

*Plural.*

1. Monēbamus, *we were advising.*
2. Monēbātis, *you were advising.*
3. Monēbant, *they were advising.*

To this conjugation belongs the verbs already used with endings *-et* and *-ent*. These are :

1. *Habēre, terrēre, timēre.*

2. *Fovēre, jubēre, manēre, vidēre*: these four form their perfects differently from 'monere.'

(255.)

1. *Ego mare timeo ; te neque fluctus neque venti terrent.*
2. *Num nos naves aedificare jubetis ? multo labore fessi sumus.*
3. *Nonne fagos latas populosque altas vides ?*
4. *Omnes hi, quos videtis libros, mei sunt.*
5. *Hi milites equos in pugnam incitabant, neque hostes timebant.*
6. *Servos domum meam omnibus rebus ornare (furnish) jubebo.*
7. *Cineres mortui amici foveo, et semper fovebo.*
8. *Teneras pecudes, quae in colle erant, nostris clamoribus terremus.*
9. *Quid facit hic puer ? nonne laborare jubebam ?*
10. *Timebant milites, qui saepè exercitus suos superaverunt.*
11. *Dextra puerum tenet, et domum reducit.*
12. *Dominus servos adventum suum exspectare jubebat.*
13. *Neque te, neque verba tua, timeo.*
14. *Pueri tres dies totos in silva manebant.*
15. *Dominus servos paludes siccare jubet.*
16. *Nonne semper nostros maximos labores memoria tenebitis ?*

17. Eruptio, quam hostes faciunt, nostras copias terrebit.
18. Pericula, quae heri vitaverunt, hodie vitare non possunt
19. Duci, qui regnum occupavit, omnes vectigalia pendunt.
20. Nostri fundunt fugantque copias, quae agros nostros vastabant.

(256.)

1. I often see your slaves in the city.
2. Have you not many books, Balbus ?
3. We frighten the thieves with our shouts.
4. You do not fear the shouts of the enemy, soldiers, do you ?
5. I will order the slaves to decorate the table every day.
6. Will you not always remember that day ?
7. The brave soldier will not fear death.
8. These words we shall always remember.
9. In a short time you will see the king himself, boys !
10. Ten ships will remain in the harbour.
11. Did I not always advise the boys ?
12. You will not, will you, master, order me to carry these *things* ?
13. The boy was frightening the birds with his shouts.
14. We were always seeing you, Balbus !
15. Will you not be afraid of those herds, girls ?
16. The girls were remaining at home in the evening.

## (257.)

1. Res adversae animum fortis viri non terrebunt.
2. Amicus meus sex menses totos Romae manebit.
3. Hujus virtutem juvenis cives semper memoria tenebunt.
4. Nemo hos milites laudabit, qui hostes timebant.
5. Laudabant omnes, culpabat nemo, fortes milites.
6. Memoria hujus belli civibus gratissima erat.
7. Milites ipsi se culpabant, ducem laudabant omnes.
8. Videbis servum, cuius virtutem laudabam.
9. Num semper hi milites summo in colle manebunt?
10. Nostri hodie fundunt fugantque hostes, quos heri timebant.
11. Adventus Caesaris regem hostium terrebat.
12. Nonne videtis naves longas praedonum?
13. Quos heri timebant hostes, hodie contemnunt.
14. Hodie habeo epistulas, quas heri exspectabam.
15. Domini servos adventum suum exspectare jubebunt.
16. Milites quam maximas possunt eruptiones faciunt.
17. Epistulam tuam, amice carissime, heri exspectaveram!
18. Ipsum ducem hostium vulneravi, et hostes superavi.
19. Rex quadraginta annos regnavit; annos octoginta tres natus mortuus est.
20. Brevi tempore, milites, copias hostium superaveritis!

## (258.)

1. I do cherish, and always shall cherish, my mother.

2. The girls remember the queen's words, and always will remember *them*.
3. Yesterday *they* were remaining at home; tomorrow *they* will not remain.
4. Do you not see these slaves who are building the ships?
5. The lightning-flashes were frightening the girls, who were in the woods.
6. Good men will always both love and cherish *their* mothers.
7. Do you not see these soldiers? They have thrown our ranks into confusion.
8. You will not, will you, fear the enemy, soldiers? Have you not often overcome them?
9. He was holding my books in *his* hand.
10. The girls were holding books in *their* right *hands*, flowers in *their* left.
11. What do you fear, soldiers? Have you not often put the enemy to flight?
12. You had a large number of books. Where are *they*?
13. This war will delight the soldiers, *it* will frighten the citizens.
14. Our men were afraid of the enemy, whom they had often overcome.
15. Caesar was giving arms to the hostages, of whom he had a large number.

## SECTION 93.

VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses.

1. *Perfect.**Singular.*

1. *Monūi, I have advised, I advised.*
2. *Monūisti, you have advised, you advised.*
3. *Monūit, he has advised, he advised.*

*Plural.*

1. *Monūimus, we have advised, we advised.*
2. *Monūistis, you have advised, you advised.*
3. *Monūērunt } they have advised, they advised.  
Monūēre }*

2. *Future Perfect.**Singular.*

1. *Monuēro, I shall have advised.*
2. *Monuēris, you will have advised.*
3. *Monuērit, he will have advised.*

*Plural.*

1. *Monuērīmus, we shall have advised.*
2. *Monuērītis, you will have advised.*
3. *Monuērint, they will have advised.*

3. *Pluperfect.**Singular.*

1. Monuēram, *I had advised.*
2. Monuēras, *you had advised.*
3. Monuērat, *he had advised.*

*Plural.*

1. Monuērāmus, *we had advised.*
2. Monuērātis, *you had advised.*
3. Monuērant, *they had advised.*

(259.)

1. Saepe pueros monui. Nonne semper verba mea contemnunt?
2. Adventus domini improbum servum terruerat.
3. Hi homines multam pecuniam illi mercatori debuerunt.
4. Alter semper, alter nunquam, corpus exercuerat.
5. Illi milites se in omni genere laborum exercuerint.
6. Pueri verba magistri semper memoria tenuerunt.
7. Balbe, nonne multam pecuniam fratri debes?
8. Clamores pueroruin hodie mihi molesti sunt; heri tacuerunt.
9. Soror mea optime valuit, ego non valui.
10. Nonne Athenis valuisti? Urbs saluberrima esse dicitur.
11. Nunquam, pueri, tacebitis? Cur semper vocem exercebitis?
12. Ego semper verba patris nostri memoria tenui; num tu tenuisti?

## (260.)

1. These boys will have taken bodily exercise every day.
2. I will order the boy to call *his* brother.
3. The citizens owed everything (plur.) to the king.
4. I used to see (imperf.) the boys every day in the public gardens.
5. You have often warned, often blamed, the boy.
6. The father and mother were very well.
7. I have always worked; I have always taken exercise.
8. All were silent; no one praised the orator.
9. I will be silent in a short time. My words are not annoying to you, are they?
10. The boy was afraid of the master, and was silent.

## (261.)

1. Omnes tacuistis, amici: num oratorem timuistis?
2. Clamores hostium nostros milites non terruerint.
3. Hi pueri, memores verborum tuorum, memoriam semper exercuerunt.
4. Ille senex divitissimus est; omnes ei pecuniam debent.
5. Semper valuimus, corpus semper exercuimus.
6. Hi pueri non solum nihil habent, sed multam etiam pecuniam amicis debent.
7. Hic Caesarem certiorem facit, ille copias in castra reducit.

8. Fluctus, quos puellae timuerunt, pueros delectabant.
9. Nonne, Balbe, multam pecuniam mercatori debes ?  
—Debeo, Quinte !
10. Te, amice carissime, aere alieno brevi tempore liberabo !
11. Croesus verba Solonis, illius viri sapientis, memoria tenuit.
12. Magna classis Persarum, quae mille ducentarum navium erat, Themistoclem non terruit.

(262.)

1. I have often warned the boy : he despises my words.
2. The arrival of the master frightened the slaves.
3. Those girls were afraid of the waves of the sea.
4. You have not feared this man, my friends, have you ?
5. We have never feared you, soldiers !
6. That old man had great riches.
7. The leader of the enemy had exercised his troops.
8. The young men owed much money to the merchants.
9. Have you not always taken exercise, boy ?
10. I had remembered all your words.

## SECTION 94.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

Parts of the Imperative and Infinitive Moods.

1. *Imperative.**Sing.* Monē, advise thou, advise.*Plur.* Monēte, advise ye, advise.2. *Infinitive.**Present.* Monēre, to advise.*Perfect.* Monuisse, to have advised.

(263.)

1. Valete, fratres; tempus est laborare; magister me vocat.
2. Frater tuus te valere jubet; pater eum exspectat.
3. Quid tristius esse potest quam nunquam valere?
4. Servi has mensas cotidie floribus ornare debent.
5. Caesar omnes milites enses dextris tenere jubebat.
6. Servi, hoc onus portate! dominus jubet.
7. Quid dulcius esse potest quam amicos cotidie videre?
8. Hi pueri duo neque diu laborare possunt, neque diu tacere.
9. Fluctus, qui te heri terrebant, cras te delectabunt.
10. Is, qui nunquam tacebit, omnium hominum moles-tissimus erit.

11. Nos hostes neque terrebunt iterum, neque superabunt.
12. Vale iterum atque iterum, amice carissime ! Quando te videbo ?
13. Caesar Britannos obsides dare jubet, et copias ad mare reducit.
14. Quis potest totam istam orationem memoria tenere ?
15. Turpe est omnes labores, omnia pericula vitare.
16. Tacete, amici ! quid potest esse turpius quam omnia amicis debere ?
17. Quid bono viro gratius esse potest quam amicis adesse ?
18. Exercete corpus, juvenes ! semper valent qui corpus exercent.
19. Gratissimae mihi tuae longissimae epistulae fuerunt.
20. Amici nostri totam urbem videre non possunt.

## (264.)

1. These boys are not able to be silent.
2. The master orders the boys to be silent.
3. We all ought to take exercise.
4. Farewell, dearest brother !
5. Owe nothing, young men !
6. Take exercise every day, boys !
7. Warn the lazy boys !
8. It is disgraceful to have feared death.
9. It is pleasant to have taken bodily exercise.
10. Be silent, boys ! be silent, girls !
11. You all ought to love *your* fathers and mothers.
12. Did you not order all to be silent ?

13. Be silent all ! your shouts are troublesome.
14. What is more disgraceful, soldier, than to have feared the enemy ?
15. It is often very difficult to boys and girls to be silent.
16. Farewell, friends ! it is time to work.
17. Hold your sword in the right hand, brother !
18. Cherish always, boys, *your* mothers, to whom you owe everything !

### XIX.

#### Ulysses in Polyphemus' Cave.—III.

Idem facit saevus ille Polyphemus postero dic, et post cenam specu excedit, et pecora in montibus pascit ; sed prius saxo, ut antea, ingenti specus januam claudit. Tum Ulixes comitesque ejus deliberabant, “Quomodo nos ab hoc crudelissimo monstro liberabimus ? Nonne omnes lacerabit, omnes devorabit ?” Tandem Ulixes callidissimum consilium comitibus aperit, quod omnes laeti probabant. Vespere, ut mos ejus erat, Cyclops in specum revertit. Tum Ulixes poculum vino, quod secum portaverat, implet, et Polyphemo dat. “Bibe,” inquit, “mi Polypheme carissime ; hoc vinum optimum est.” Bibit Polyphemus. “Verum est quod dicis, hoc vinum optimum est. Da mihi, oro te, amice, alterum poculum vini ! Sed quid tibi nomen est, parve homo ?” Tum Ulixes, postquam poculum iterum implevit, “O Polypheme,” inquit, “rарum nomen mihi est, Nemo nomen est.” “Mi carissime Nemo,” respondet ridens Polyphemus, “optimum vinum mihi das, ego tibi hoc praemium dabo ; te postremum omnium ad cenam mihi parabo.”

## SECTION 95.

## VERBS : THIRD CONJUGATION—INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses.

*Rēgērē, to rule.*

1. *Present.*

*Singular.*

1. *Rēgo, I rule.*
2. *Rēgis, you rule.*
3. *Rēgit, he rules.*

*Plural.*

1. *Rēgīnus, we rule.*
2. *Rēgītis, you rule.*
3. *Rēgunt, they rule.*

2. *Future.*

*Singular.*

1. *Regam, I shall rule.*
2. *Regēs, you will rule.*
3. *Reget, he will rule.*

*Plural.*

1. *Regēmus, we shall rule.*
2. *Regētis, you will rule.*
3. *Regent, they will rule.*

3. *Imperfect.*

*Singular.*

1. *Regēbam, I was ruling.*
2. *Regēbas, you were ruling.*
3. *Regēbat, he was ruling.*

*Plural.*

1. *Regēbāmus, we were ruling.*
2. *Regēbātis, you were ruling.*
3. *Regēbant, they were ruling.*

To this conjugation belong the following verbs, which have already been used :—

1. Ago	duco	incolo.
cano	educo	lego.
carpo	reduco	mitto.
contemno	fundo	pendo.
dico	incido	peto.
		uro.
2. Capiō	facio	jacio.
accipio	conficio	

## (265.)

1. Multae aves prima aestate in his silvis carent.
2. Media nocte nostri naves solvunt, et prima luce terram capient.
3. Qui nunquam corpus exercent, nunquam valebunt.
4. Unus solum (adverb) puer laborabat; ceteri nihil agebant.
5. Ventus semper naves in altum mare agebat.
6. Cur iterum atque iterum in aes alienum inciditis, juvenes?
7. Illius viri virtutem semper, pueri, memoria tenete!
8. Hostes ex locis superioribus tela in nostros jaciebant.
9. Puer improbus aquam in caput fratribus semper fundebat.
10. Nos obsides accipiebamus, dabamus nunquam.
11. Nonne fratrem aliquando tacere jubebis, Quinte?
12. Hi homines turpissimam vitam agebant.
13. Ad pontem, quem superiore anno aedificaverant, milites veniebant.
14. Hostes majores equitum copias, quam superioribus diebus habuerant, castris educebant.
15. Tibi, puella, quos habeo pulcherrimos flores carpat!

## (266.)

1. We make a great slaughter of the enemy.
2. What are you reading, boy?—I am reading the same book.
3. I will send you (dative) a letter every day.

4. In the morning Caesar will lead out his forces from the camp.
5. The slaves will drive the herds into the fields.
6. Our men were killing a large number of the enemy.
7. The soldiers will set sail in the middle of the night.
8. The slaves were reading your letters.
9. The cavalry were setting sail from (*ex*, with abl.) the higher harbour.
10. I shall not always inhabit this city.
11. *In* the early morning I was gathering flowers.
12. The enemy were throwing darts at our men for four hours (acc.) *in* all (whole).

(267.)

1. Milites, prima luce, ex superiore portu naves solvent.
2. Nostri firmissimum foedus cum hostibus faciunt.
3. Vale iterum atque iterum, mi frater! cotidie tibi epistulam mittam.
4. Hostes semper tela in nostros jaciebant, neque multos vulnerabant.
5. Caesar milites maiores, quam superiore anno, naves aedicare jubebat.
6. Libros semper in manibus habebat, legebat nunquam.
7. Ignis totam classem, quae trecentarum navium erat, urebat.
8. Equitum partem vulnerabunt, partem interficiunt.
9. Quintus fratrem cotidie de rebus urbanis certiorem faciet.

10. Aliae civitates legatos de pace mittebant, aliae omnes copias finibus educebant.
11. Nostri majorem quam superiore anno hostium numerum interficient.
12. Puella misera in aquam incidebat, fratremque magna voce vocabat.
13. Frater tuus ubi est?—Eum tibi brevi tempore mittam.
14. Pars hominum in agris manebat, pars in castra veniebat.
15. Num vos, milites, qui hostes saepissime superavistis, pacem ab isdem petetis?

## (268.)

1. You will not see my brother again.
2. Farewell, brother! Will you not send me a letter every day?
3. Caesar was setting sail with a favourable wind at midnight.
4. Girls! will you not gather *some* flowers for us?
5. The cavalry will make sallies *from* all the gates.
6. The enemy's darts were wounding only a small number of our men.
7. The enemy will send ambassadors, and ask for peace.
8. We were inhabiting this city *in* the previous year.
9. I will warn the boy: his manners are very bad.
10. I will never fall into debt.
11. We were long awaiting you, Quintus!
12. Our men were wounding some, they were killing others.

## SECTION 96.

VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses.

1. *Perfect.**Singular.*

1. *Rexi, I have ruled, I ruled.*
2. *Rexisti, you have ruled, you ruled.*
3. *Rexit, he has ruled, he ruled.*

*Plural.*

1. *Reximus, we have ruled, we ruled.*
2. *Rexistis, you have ruled, you ruled.*
3. *Rexērunt } they have ruled, they ruled.*  
*Rexēre }*

2. *Future Perfect.**Singular.*

1. *Rexero, I shall have ruled.*
2. *Rexēris, you will have ruled.*
3. *Rexērit, he will have ruled.*

*Plural.*

1. *Rexērimus, we shall have ruled.*
2. *Rexēritis, you will have ruled.*
3. *Rexērint, they will have ruled.*

3. *Pluperfect.**Singular.*

1. *Rexēram, I had ruled.*
2. *Rexēras, you had ruled.*
3. *Rexērat, he had ruled.*

*Plural.*

1. *Rexērāmus, we had ruled.*
2. *Rexērātis, you had ruled.*
3. *Rexērant, they had ruled.*

By no means all the verbs of this conjugation form their perfects (and consequently the future perfect and pluperfect) like *regō*. Some of these appear in the following exercise, but only regular perfects are introduced into the English into Latin exercises.

## (269.)

1. *Hic trigesinta duo, ille viginti septem annos, vixit.*
2. *Quid facitis, pueri? num in me hos lapides jacitis?*
3. *Hostes tela omnis generis in nostrum agmen jece-  
runt.*
4. *Caesar milites urbem aggere circumdare jubebit.*
5. *Magistri pueros cotidie corpus exercere jubebant.*
6. *Legati Caesarem de suis rebus certiorem facient.*
7. *Regem de Caesaris legionumque adventu certiorem  
fecerunt.*
8. *Nonne mihi longiores aliquando epistulas mittes?*
9. *Hostes in isdem locis diu non manebant.*
10. *Sorores meae totam hiemem in urbe manebunt.*
11. *Rempublicam summa sapientia multos iam annos  
rexerat.*

12. Quid! nonne de his rebus multa jam diximus?
13. Magnam copiarum partem ad mare jam duxerat.
14. Illi pueri et Caesaris et Ciceronis opera legunt.
15. Hic improbissimus servus omnes meas epistulas legcrat.

(270.)

1. The sailor steered (*regō*) the ship with one hand.
2. I shall have ruled this State for two and twenty years.<sup>1</sup>
3. I have joined my forces with (*cum*, with abl.) Caesar's army.
4. The king lived for eighty-four years.
5. What did you say to your brother?—I said nothing.
6. The girl will give the flowers, which (acc.) she was gathering, to *her* father.
7. Caesar had led out all his forces from the camp.
8. Quintus was reading the books with very great diligence.
9. The enemy led back *their* forces with the utmost speed.
10. I shall never receive longer letters.

(271.)

1. Milites totum opus paucis diebus confecerant.
2. Neque multos vulneravimus, neque multos interfecimus.

<sup>1</sup> The pupil will have noticed that the noun expressing for *how long* something lasted, or somebody did something, is put in the accusative. This is called "the accusative of duration of time."

3. Imbris creberrimi me totum diem domi tenebant.
4. Hostes pontem solverunt,<sup>1</sup> quem superiore anno fecerant.
5. Tota classis, quae centum viginti navium erat, superiorem portum capit.
6. Multis pueris tacere res difficillima esse dicitur.
7. Caesar viginti tria vulnera acceperat.
8. Prorae ingentes nostrarum navium hostes terruerunt.
9. Hos pueros similes mores conjunxerant.
10. Puella omnes quos carpserat flores matri dabat.
11. Caesar milites maiores quam jam fecerant naves aedificare jubebat.
12. Multas epistulas ab amicis heri acceperam.
13. Nostri omnes, qui illam insulam incolebant, homines interfecerunt.
14. Portus septem milia passuum ab urbe akerat.
15. Quando te iterum videbo?—Paucis diebus me videbis, vale!

(272.)

1. The best men ruled the commonwealth.
2. Caesar has joined all the auxiliary troops with (*cum*, with abl.) his army.
3. My father lived for fifty-six years, my mother for forty-three.
4. The fire will burn the whole of the enemy's fleet.
5. He ruled the commonwealth for twenty years with extreme wisdom.
6. That old man will have lived eighty-eight years to-morrow.

<sup>1</sup> Solvo pontem, *I break up the bridge.*

7. You will not, will you, boy, despise *your* father's words ?
8. What did *your* brother say to you ?—He only said a few words.
9. I shall never ask for your help.
10. Farewell, brother ; farewell, sisters ! the ship is now in harbour.

## SECTION 97.

VERBS : THIRD CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

Parts of the Imperative and Infinitive Moods.

### 1. *Imperative.*

*Singular.*

Rēgē, rule.

*Plural.*

Regīte, rule.

### 2. *Infinitive.*

*Present.*

Regēr̄, to rule.

*Perfect.*

Rexisso, to have ruled.

(273.)

1. Tempus est naves solvere. Ubi sunt nautae ?
2. Hi pueri ad patrem multo longiores epistulas mittere debent.
3. Quid utilius esse potest quam bonos libros legere ?
4. Non a me, sed a fratre tuo, auxilium pete, Quinte !
5. Mittite legatos ad regem vestrum de his rebus, duces !

6. Quid turpius esse potest quam semper ab amicis auxilium petere ?
7. Caesar omnes copias in fines Gallorum duxisse dicitur.
8. Conjungite copias vestras cum cetero exercitu, consules !
9. Contemnите divitias, cives ! sapientiam amate !
10. Diutius in his locis non manebo. Hoc dicite amico vestro !
11. Caesar viginti tria vulnera accepisse dicitur.
12. Vivite diutissime, vivite beati semper !
13. Carpite hos pulchros flores ! inatrem vestram delectabunt.
14. Pende quam mihi debes pecuniam !—Neque debeo, neque pendum.
15. Majorem cladem, quam heri acceperunt, accipere non possunt.

(274.)

1. I have your books, Quintus, you have mine.
2. You ought not to gather all the flowers.
3. Order the sailors to set sail.
4. The ships are not able to make the harbour.
5. What are you doing in the garden, friends ? Tell me (dative).
6. Be always reading<sup>1</sup> the works of Cicero, boy !
7. To say is easier by far than to do.
8. Set sail, sailors ! the wind is favourable.
9. It is disgraceful to be always falling into debt.
10. That man is said to have lived very long.

<sup>1</sup> Rēge means also "be ruling."

11. What can be more delightful than to be making verses ?
12. Give *some* wine to me, slave ! I am tired with the long journey.
13. You, friends, are gathering our flowers, we are gathering yours.
14. That boy always has a large number of books in his hands.
15. Your hands, Balbus, are much larger than mine !

## XX.

## Ulysses in Polyphemus' Cave.—IV.

Polyphemum, qui non unum et alterum solum sed plurima etiam pocula vini biberat, altus somnus opprimit. Ulixes autem jam antea palum, quem in specu invenerat, acuerat, et carentem fecerat. Hunc carentem palum in unum oculum Polypheui intrusit, et ita Cyclopem excaecavit. Is, postquam dolorem sensit, omnium Cyclopum auxilium imploravit. Cyclopes igitur ad specum venerunt, et interrogaverunt, "Quis te, O Polypheume, necare cupit?" Respondet ille, "Nemo me necare cupit, amici." Exclamat Cyclopes, "Cur auxilium nostrum imploravisti, si nemo te necare cupit!" Tum domum reverterunt. Polyphemus autem frustra Graecos toto specu capere cupivit; semper ex manibus ejus se eripiunt. "Ubi estis, amici?" exclamat. Graeci callide tacebant. Postero die more suo Cyclops saxum, quod januam claudebat, amovet, et oves emittit. Ulixes autem comites suos sub alvis ovium religaverat; ipse se manibus sub alvo arietis tenebat. Ita omnes feliciter carcere excedunt.

## SECTION 98.

## VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses.

**Audire**, *to hear.*

## 1. Present.

*Singular.*

1. *Audio, I hear.*
2. *Audis, you hear.*
3. *Audit, he hears.*

*Plural.*

1. *Audimus, we hear.*
2. *Audit̄is, you hear.*
3. *Audiunt, they hear.*

## 2. Future.

*Singular.**Plural.*

1. *Audiam, I shall hear.*
2. *Audiēs, you will hear.*
3. *Audiet, he will hear.*

1. *Audiēmus, we shall hear.*
2. *Audiēt̄is, you will hear.*
3. *Audient, they will hear.*

## 3. Imperfect.

*Singular.**Plural.*

1. *Audiēbam, I was hearing.*
2. *Audiēbas, you were hearing.*
3. *Audiēbat, he was hearing.*

1. *Audiēbāmus, we were hearing.*
2. *Audiēbāt̄is, you were hearing.*
3. *Audiēbānt, they were hearing.*

(275.)

1. Nonne audis ventum? nautae naves solvere non possunt.

2. Vestras epistulas neque potest legere neque cupiet.
3. Num semper vocem tuam audiam? Nunquam tacebis?
4. Multa hodie scio, quae heri nesciebam.
5. Pater te vocat. Num surdus es? nonne vocem ejus audis?
6. Non eadem cupient senes et pueri.
7. In eo colle, quem occupaverant, castra muniebant.
8. Quae senes delectabunt pueris saepe molesta erunt.
9. Quando fratres vestri domum venient?—Nescimus.
10. Legiones tres in armis erant, duae castra muniebant.
11. Quis est ille puer, cuius vocem semper audio?
12. Nostri hodie se castris tenebant, cras eruptionem facient.
13. Cur flores in hortis regiis carpitis? nonne custodes auditis?
14. Nostri hostes superaverunt; multos interfecerunt, ingentem hominum numerum vulneraverunt.
15. Scio: omnia ex amico audiebam; semper me de his rebus certiorem facit.

(276.)

1. The leader hears the soldiers' shouts.
2. These boys always desire the same things.
3. He will not hear your words: he is deaf in that ear.
4. Where will your brothers be to-morrow, friends?—We don't know.
5. What do you hear from (*cum*, with abl.) Balbus about these affairs?

6. Where are the slaves ?—They will come soon.
7. Will he wish to lead out all the forces from camp ?
8. Six legions were fortifying the camp.
9. Where were you, my friends ?—You will never know, Balbus !
10. We see with *our* eyes, we hear with *our* ears.—I know that.
11. When will you come, friends ? I wish to see you all.
12. Some of the soldiers were under (in) arms ; others were fortifying the camp.

## SECTION 99.

VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses.

#### 1. *Perfect.*

##### *Singular.*

1. *Audivi, I have heard, I heard.*
2. *Audivisti, you have heard, you heard.*
3. *Audivit, he has heard, he heard.*

##### *Plural.*

1. *Audivimus, we have heard, we heard.*
2. *Audivistis, you have heard, we heard.*
3. *Audivērunt } they have heard, they heard.*  
*Audivēre }*

## 2. Future Perfect.

*Singular.*

1. *Audivero, I shall have heard.*
2. *Audivēris, you will have heard.*
3. *Audivērit, he will have heard.*

*Plural*

1. *Audivērimus, we shall have heard.*
2. *Audivēritis, you will have heard.*
3. *Audivērint, they will have heard.*

## 3. Pluperfect.

*Singular.*

1. *Audivēram, I had heard.*
2. *Audivēras, you had heard.*
3. *Audivērat, he had heard.*

*Plural.*

1. *Audivērāmus, we had heard.*
2. *Audivērātis, you had heard.*
3. *Audivērant, they had heard.*

1. *Audivisti-ne omnia ? Have you heard everything ?*
2. *Nonne omnia audivisti ? Have you not heard everything ?*
3. *Num omnia audivisti ? You have not heard everything, have you ?*

(277.)

1. *Quid ! nonne audivi omnia quae pueri vestri dicebant ?*
2. *Non hodie cupis, quae heri cupivisti.*
3. *Milites jam castra muniverunt ; omnes bras in armis erunt.*

4. Audiveras-ne ea quae dicebam?—Audiveram.
5. Haec-ne omnia nescivisti?—Nemo me certiore fecit.
6. Hae puellae totum diem dormiverunt.
7. Cupivisti-ne omnes hos, quos habuisti, libros legere?
8. Nautae vento adverso naves solvere non possunt.
9. Partem orationis omnes audiverunt, partem audivit nemo.
10. Rex, qui mortuus est, quattuor et quadraginta annos vixit.
11. Labienus omnes suas copias cum decem Caesaris legionibus conjunxerat.
12. Milites, qui heri castra muniebant, hodie omnes in armis erant.

(278.)

1. The soldiers had fortified the camp with the utmost speed.
2. I have always wished to read the works of Cicero.
3. They will have fortified the hill in a few days.
4. Have you heard<sup>1</sup> the words of this orator, brother?
5. This boy has slept already for thirteen hours.
6. You had not heard, had you, the shouts of our soldiers?
7. The sailors are not able to steer this ship.
8. Have many citizens heard the orator's words?
9. I do not wish to see you to-day; yesterday I did wish.
10. Have you heard, friends, the words of our king?

<sup>1</sup> The *-ne* should be joined on to the word that is put first.

## SECTION 100.

VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

Parts of the Imperative and Infinitive Moods.

1. *Imperative.**Sing.* Audi, hear!*Plur.* Audite, hear!2. *Infinitive.**Present.* Audire, to hear.*Perfect.* Audivisse, to have heard.

(279.)

1. Hi pueri miseri dormire non possunt.
2. Hic puer sedecim jam horas dormivisse dicitur.
3. Veni solus! ceteros videre non cupio.
4. Dormite, viatores! nonne longo itinere fessi estis?
5. Tempusne est dormire? fessus sum.—Tempus est, dormi!
6. Hostes omnes portus, qui in litore nostro erant, tenebant.
7. Milites decimae legionis celeriter ad auxilium conveniunt.
8. Hae puellae dormire cupiunt; sed non possunt.
9. Diu te iterum videre cupio. Cur nunquam ad me venis?
10. Quid turpius est quam nescire? quid dulcius quam scire?

11. Multaene res Caesarem ad id bellum incitabant?
12. Nunquam cum majoribus hostium copiis pugnaverunt nostri.

(280.)

1. Hear, boy, the words of your master!
2. Listen, citizens, to the words of your king!
3. You ought to come to (*ad*) me every day.
4. He orders the soldiers to fortify the camp quickly.
5. Come at once, Marcus! don't you hear me?
6. The legions come together at once.
7. All wish to hear; no one is able to.
8. Come to me every day with (*cum*) all your books.
9. Your father is calling you: you ought to come at once.
10. Farewell! you have been very good boys; I praise you all.

(281.)

1. Veni aliquando! cur nunquam te video?
2. Decimae legionis milites haec castra munire dicuntur.
3. Cotidie corpus exercere debes, neque totum diem dormire.
4. Diu in nostros tela jaciebant, neque multos interficiebant.
5. Dormivistine, Quinte?—Sex jam horas dormivi.
6. Incitate equos, terrete hostes, locum capite, munita castra!
7. Tacete, pueri, statim! pater dormire cupit; clamores vestri ei molesti erunt.

8. Naves omnes ad superiorem portum statim convenire jubet.
9. Facite me, milites, de omnibus his rebus certiorem !
10. Caesar milites, quorum maximum habebat numerum, statim ex omnibus partibus convenire jubet.
11. Hostes nullum telum ex loco superiore frustra (in vain) mittunt.
12. Caesar milites urbem lato aggere celeriter circumdare jubebat.

## (282.)

1. •Fortify this camp quickly, soldiers !
2. Boys ! send these things at once to your mothers !
3. Caesar orders the soldiers to come together at once.
4. Your brothers cannot come to you every day.
5. Have you heard all his oration ?
6. Are you tired, boys ? It is time to sleep.
7. Come in the evening, friends ! I wish to see you.
8. Be silent, boys ! the master will hear your shouts.
9. These soldiers are said to have already fortified the camp.
10. You ought not to pick these flowers, boys : they are not yours.

## XXI.

## Ulysses in Polyphemus' Cave.—V.

Tum summa celeritate ad litus properaverunt. Navem condescendunt, et a litore solvunt. Ulixes autem magna voce clamavit, " O Polypheme, si amici tui te interrogaverint,

‘Quis te excaecavit?’ ita te respondere jubebo, ‘Ulixes me excaecavit.’” Polyphemus autem, ira infensus, ingens saxum in navem jecit, quae Graecorum navem paene oppressit. Ulixes autem post multos tandem errores feliciter ad patriam venit. Adventus ejus Penelopae uxori et Telemacho filio gratissimus erat.

## SECTION 101.

### VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE.

### FIRST CONJUGATION : INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present, Future, and Imperfect Tenses.*

Amāri, *to be loved.*

Present : Amor, *I am loved.*

Future : Amābor, *I shall be loved.*

Imperfect : Amābar, *I was being loved.*

(*For the complete tenses, see p. 284.*)

(283.)

1. Fratres a sororibus, sorores a fratribus, amari debent.
2. Epistulis tuis, frater, omnes delectamur !
3. Milites, qui castra muniebant, a duce laudantur.
4. Praemio non ornaris, nam pigerrimus fuisti.
5. Adventus classis nuntiatur : paucis diebus in portu erit.
6. Num ab hostibus, quos saepe jam superavistis, nunc ipsi superabimini ?

7. Castra jam ab hostibus circumdabantur.
8. Agri nostri totum diem ab equitibus vastabantur.
9. Amicus tuus carminibus Horatii delectabitur.
10. Ego amicique mei pulcherrima puellae voce delectabamur.
11. Non datur omnibus semper valere.
12. Juvenes ab amicis aere alieno liberabantur.

## (284.)

1. It is pleasant to be sometimes praised.
2. I am charmed by your welcome letter.
3. You will be blamed, I shall be praised.
4. The table will be decorated with flowers by the girls.
5. That burden will very easily be carried by the slaves.
6. The cavalry were being posted on the left wing.
7. Were you not charmed with the king's speech?
8. The whole fleet will soon be put to flight.
9. The lands of the enemy were being laid waste.
10. These slaves will at once be set free by their master.

## (285.)

1. Pars equitum vulneratur, partem nostri capiunt.
2. Captivi omnes magna pecunia liberabantur.
3. Orator ingentem pecuniam a rége accipiet.
4. Incepit nostra ab omnibus laudantur.
5. Nonne hi pueri aliquando laborare incipient?
6. Nonne, milites, voce ducis incitabimini?

7. Non a magistro solum, puer, sed a patre etiam culpaberis.
8. Heri a magistro culpabar, eras ab eodem laudabor.
9. Nonne a Marco 'carissimus amicus' saepissime vocabaris?
10. Tota palus a militibus summa diligentia siecabitur.
11. Aliquando tibi majus quam quod jam accepisti praemium dabitur.
12. Hostes, qui heri fugabantur, castra nostra hodie oppugnare incipiunt.

## (286.)

1. The boys will be charmed with the big ship.
2. There are three thousand captives in the camp.
3. Your undertakings will not be praised by the citizens.
4. You will be wounded by the knight.
5. Are you not pleased with the boy's letter?
6. The general receives very severe wounds.
7. All the cavalry were being posted on the right wing.
8. Will you not begin to work at once?
9. We were being praised by some, and blamed by others.
10. Some receive rewards, others are blamed.

## SECTION 102.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD—(*Continued*).

Perfect : Amātus sum, *I have been loved, I was loved.*  
 Future Perfect : Amatus ero, *I shall have been loved.*  
 Pluperfect : Amatus eram, *I had been loved.*

(287.)

1. A ceteris saepe, a te, Quinte, nunquam laudatus sum.
2. Nonne pars equitum in dextro cornu collocata erit?
3. Magna pars Italiae a Carthaginiensibus vastata erat.
4. Judex non debet a civibus pecuniam accipere.
5. Adventus navium longarum a crebris nuntiis nuntiatus erit.
6. Aristides a civibus Justus vocabatur.
7. Justitia ab omnibus amari debet.
8. Adventus classis nuntiatus est; paucis diebus in portu erit.
9. Floribus, qui in horto tuo sunt, saepe delectati sumus.
10. Jus bonis civibus, malis iniuria grata est.
11. Venus omnium pulcherrima esse judicata est.
12. Judicia regis a multis hominibus non sunt laudata.

(288.)

1. That judge has always been called very upright.
2. The queen has been praised by all good men.

3. The arrival of the ambassadors had already been announced.
4. The camp was being surrounded by a high rampart.
5. Your judgments have been praised by all the citizens.
6. The justice of the king will have been praised by all.
7. The territories of the enemy have already been often laid waste by our men.
8. The swords have been carried to the camp by the soldiers.
9. This weighty judgment had been at once announced to the king.
10. This man has been judged by all to be a very good citizen.

(289.)

1. Injuriae quas accepimus gravissimae sunt.
2. Dextra pede gravissime vulneratus sum.
3. Ab illo homine incepta nostra saepe culpata sunt.
4. Nonne aliquando hi captivi liberati erunt?
5. Nos pueri a sororibus superati sumus.
6. Hoc gravissimum onus a puero ad urbem portatum erat.
7. A bonis laudati, a malis culpati, erimus.
8. Galli ad Caesarem de injuriis suis nuntios mittunt.
9. Num, milites, ab hostibus fugati estis?
10. Hujus justitia, illius sapientia, jure laudabatur.
11. Saepe a te culpati eramus; qua de causa nescio.
12. Aere alieno a Marco, fidissimo amico carissimoque, liberatus sum.

## (290.)

1. I had been carried to the city by my slaves.
2. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised.
3. Have you not, Cornelia, been delighted with my diligence ?
4. Had you not, my sisters, been called by mother ?
5. Have you been wounded very seriously ?
6. The justice of that judge had been praised by many.
7. You will have been routed, soldiers, by the enemy's cavalry.
8. Have not all the captives been released ?
9. Your wrongs are not much greater than mine.
10. In vain, boys, will you have been urged to greater diligence.

## XXII.

Nasica and Ennius.

“Not at Home.”

Nasica aliquando ad poetam Ennium vēnit. Eum ab ostio quaerit. Respondet ancilla, “Domi non est.” Ita tamen domini jussu dixit, et Ennius intus erat, resque Nasicae nota erat. Paucis post diebus vēnit Ennius ad Nasicam. “Non est domi,” exclamat ipse Nasica. Tum Ennius “Quid !” inquit, “ego non cognosco vocem tuam ?” Respondet Nasica, “Homo es impudens : ego ancillae tuae credidi, tu mihi non creditis ipsi.”

## XXIII.

## Literal Obedience.

Marcus Pūpius Piso, orator Romanus, servos omnes aliquando convocabat. "Nimium," inquit, "loquaces semper estis, et saepe mihi, domino vestro, molesti estis. Si quid vos interrogaverim, respondebitis; alioquin vos tacere jubeo." Paucis post diebus Piso servum, et alios amicos, et Clodium quemdam ad convivium invitare jubet. Hora cenae instat. Aderant ceteri convivae omnes: solum Clodium exspectant. "Ubi est noster Clodius? quid agit? Servi, nonne vēnit Clodius?" "Non vēnit," respondent. Tandem Piso servum, quem Clodium invitare jusserrat, ad se vocat. "Nonne Clodium invitavisti?"—"Invitavi."—"Cur ergo non vēnit?"—"Quia negavit se venire posse." Tum Piso, iratus, "Cur id non statim dixisti?"—"Quia me non interrogavisti."

## SECTION 103.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD.

**Monēri, to be warned.**

Present: Moneor, *I am warned.*

Future: Monēbor, *I shall be warned.*

Imperfect: Monēbar, *I was (being) warned.*

(291.)

1. Amari quam timeri multo melius est.
2. Nihil ab illis militibus, viris audacissimis, timetur.

3. Sapientia quam audacia multis partibus melior est.
4. Praedones maritimi vento adverso mare audacter transeunt.
5. Hi fures gravibus judicium verbis terrebuntur.
6. Tota classis a nobis in litore videbatur.
7. Num tibi severissimus video?
8. Magna pecunia mihi ab illo homine debebatur.
9. Pueri a magistro tacere jubebuntur.
10. Prora hujus navis multis floribus a nautis ornata erit.
11. Equi militum tertiae legionis cotidie exercebantur.
12. Hic collis, qui ab hostibus tenebatur, jam a nostris occupatus est.
13. Nonne verbis hujus severissimi judicis terrebare?
14. Teneo te, mi frater, non a te teneor.
15. Nonne, pueri, saepe ab eodem magistro monebamini?

## (292.)

1. The enemy's ships are seen by our sailors.
2. I am not frightened by the shouts of the soldiers.
3. Those men were rightly considered very daring.
4. They were frightening their horses with their spurs.
5. The horses were being frightened by the soldiers' shouts.
6. Will you not be warned in time?
7. The daring of these men seems very great.
8. You will not, will you, be frightened by the waves?

9. Will you not seem to be frightened ?
10. We shall all be charmed by the harbour and the ships.
11. His undertakings had been blamed, not by me only, but by all.
12. Our wrongs seem to us very great.

## SECTION 104.

### SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE : INDICATIVE MOOD—(*Continued*).<sup>1</sup>

Perfect :      Monitus sum, *I have been warned, I was warned.*

Future Perfect : Monitus ero, *I shall have been warned.*

Pluperfect :    Monitus eram, *I had been warned.*

(293.)

1. Equi equitesque crebro fulgure territi sunt.
2. Puerorum alter domi sedebat, alter foris semper erat.
3. Praemia bonorum a malis civibus possidentur.
4. Trecenti obsides Caesari a Gallis dati sunt.
5. Haec urbs a nostris diu obsidebatur.
6. Pueri a me saepe moniti, saepe culpati, sunt.
7. Haec regio urbis semper pulcherrima habita est.
8. Sapientes clamoribus istorum hominum non territi erunt.
9. Oratio Ciceronis reipublicae utilissima habita est.

10. Nobis ipsis injuriae nostrae gravissimae videbantur.
11. Ille vir omnium sapientissimus haberi dicitur.
12. Hi viri jure optimo fortissimi habitu sunt.

## (294.)

1. The boys were sitting every day in the garden.
2. That city was being besieged in vain.
3. Marcus now possesses his brother's books.
4. Caesar, you have been praised by all the citizens!
5. He has been judged the wisest of all.
6. Your little brother will have been frightened by the lightning.
7. Will you not be delighted with your elder son's diligence?
8. You will not, will you, be frightened by the spirited horse?
9. The sailors have been warned again and again.
10. Marcus has always been considered, and is, a very good citizen.

## XXIV.

## A Cork Leg.

Viator Britannicus, a fera quadam atque inculta gente captus, diu de salute sua desperabat. Tandem novum quidem et inauditum consilium capit. Cultrum enim primo in alterum crus (corticeum erat) ridens infixit: mirantur qui circumstabant barbari, et paululum recedunt. Deinde totum crus exuit, et minaci vultu manibus supra caput vibravit. Tum vero illi, maximo commoti timore, summa vi in pedes se dederunt.

## XXV.

## The Fable of the Members of the Body.

Plebs Romana, acre alieno et assiduo militae labore oppressa, in Aventinum montem secedit. Menenius Agrippa, facundus vir et plebi carus, a patribus ad montem mittitur. Apud plebem talam orationem habuit.—Membra corporis aliquando consilium habuerunt. “Nos omnes,” clamant, “nostro assiduo labore, nostra cura, nostro ministerio, ventri cibum damus. Venter autem, in medio quietus, nihil agit.” Membra igitur conjurant. Non pedes cibum quaerunt, non manus in os fert, non dentes conficiunt; fame ventrem domare cupiunt. Ita membra totumque corpus ad extremam tabem veniunt. Tum venter: “Quid!” inquit, “ego nihil ago? non est ita! Vos mihi cibum et quaeritis et datis; ego vobis et sanguinem et omnia reddo, quibus vivitis et vigeatis.”—Plebs autem, verbis Agrippae mota, ad urbem reddit.

## SECTION 105.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Rēgi, to be ruled.*

Present: *Regor, I am ruled.*

Future: *Regar, I shall be ruled.*

Imperfect: *Regēbar, I was (being) ruled.*

## (295.)

1. Frater imaginem clari oratoris in conclavi suo ponit.
2. Omnes res nostrae nunc ab hostibus possidentur.
3. Omnis spes nostra in virtute ponitur.
4. Oinnes milites tertiae legionis navibus imponebantur.
5. A multis divitiae sapientiae anteponentur.
6. Milites sextae et nonae legionis e castris mane educentur.
7. Vectigalia omnia tempore pendentur.
8. Hoc poema ab omnibus legetur et laudabitur.
9. Illi servi a domino saepe moniti sunt, sed tacent nunquam.
10. Libri, qui heri optimi habebantur, hodie contemnuntur.
11. Madidae vestes a nautis in litore ponebantur.
12. Haec urbs totam aestatem a nostris obsidebatur; frustra incepsum fuit.

## (296.)

1. The king himself was putting a crown on his son's head.
2. The good judge will prefer justice to riches.
3. The horses were being put on the ships.
4. The camp was being pitched on the top of the hill.
5. Our city will soon be besieged by the enemy.
6. The ship will be driven on to the rocks.

7. The troops will be led back to-morrow to the camp.
8. In vain was help being sought from Caesar.
9. Some were being killed, others were being captured.
10. To-day the camp will be pitched, to-morrow the soldiers will make an attack.

## (297.)

1. Nonne saepe, serve, ad urbem a domino mitteris ?
2. Cras a patre, puer, ad regios hortos mittēris !
3. Quid ! nonne his telis, quae ab omnibus partibus jaciuntur, interficiemur ?
4. Cotidie in silvas a matre mittimur.
5. Hoc opus brevi tempore conficietur.
6. Pecunia justitiae ab his judicibus anteponetur.
7. Calices aurei mensis regiis imponentur.
8. Frustra hic puer monebitur, frustra culpabitur.
9. Mox, nuntii, ad Caesarem mittemini.
10. Amo te, mi frater, sed a te contemnor !

## (298.)

1. I am being sent by my father to the city.
2. Our men were being killed by the enemy.
3. Boy, you are despised by your friends !
4. We shall be sent into the woods soon.
5. Are you sent to Rome every day ?
6. Your undertakings will be despised by the old men.
7. The arms will be put on the ships by the sailors.
8. The queen will be loved by all the citizens.

## SECTION 106.

## VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD—(*Continued*).

Perfect:           Rectus sum, *I have been ruled, I was ruled.*  
 Future Perfect:   Rectus ero, *I shall have been ruled.*  
 Pluperfect:       Rectus eram, *I had been ruled.*

(299.)

1. Navis a nauta optime recta erat.
2. Copiae, quae mane educebantur, jam reductae sunt.
3. Milites e castris, quae heri ponebantur, exeunt.
4. Annos natus novem ad magistrum a patre ductus sum.
5. Triginta jam naves a militibus aedificatae sunt.
6. Marcus et Balbus, optimi pueri, lac vino anteponent.
7. Tota classis, quae ducentarum navium erat, pro portu instructa est.
8. Omnes libri a servis in mensa ponentur.
9. Brevi tempore omnes copiae pro castris instructae erunt.
10. Legiones a Caesare ad flumen ductae sunt.
11. Summum jus saepe summa' injuria esse dicitur.
12. Hi pueri, immemores magistri, neque libros legent neque tacebunt.
13. Crebri nuntii ad Caesarem de injuriis suis a Gallis mittentur.

14. Nuntii magnis clamoribus ad castra a militibus ducti sunt.
15. Jam fessi sumus ; tres horas totas instructi sumus, neque hostes videntur.

(300.)

1. The soldiers have been led back to the camp.
2. The army had already been drawn up.
3. I was led by the boy's shouts to the river.
4. This coast was being inhabited by the sailors.
5. Two legions were led out of the camp.
6. Only a few soldiers were being killed by the darts.
7. The ships will have been already drawn up before the harbour.
8. Three ships will have been built in one day.
9. When will the messengers be sent to the leader?
10. The enemy's city will be besieged to-morrow.
11. You will not be warned again, you have been often warned already.
12. Socrates was rightly being judged the wisest of all men.

## XXVI.

### David and Goliath.

Rex quidam cum barbaris bellum gerebat. Ex hac parte copiae regiae castra posuerant, ex altera parte barbari; et inter duos exercitus vallis erat. Veniebat autem cotidie ex castris barbarorum vir ingentis magnitudinis ; unumque ex regiis copiis ad singulare certamen provocabat, magna

voce clamans, “Eligite ex vobis virum unum; is mecum pugnabit. Si ille vicerit, erimus vobis servi; sin ego vicero, vos nobis servi eritis.”

Erat autem puer quidam, cuius fratres majores natu in regiis castis erant. Hunc pater panem, caseum, vinum ad fratres in castra portare jubet. Venit igitur ille puer hostemque videt, et verba ejus contumeliosa audit. “Quid!” dicit militibus qui adstabant, “nemo cum hoc homine configere audet?” “Nemo,” respondent milites. Fratres autem irati dixerunt, “Cur huc venisti, et istas paucas oves in deserto reliquisti? Nota est nobis superbia tua. Nonne pugnam videre cupivisti?”

## XXVII.

### David and Goliath—(*Continued*).

At ille puer ad regem statim properat. “Rex,” inquit, “cum hoc homine configere cupio.” “Quid! tu, qui puer imberbis es, cum tanto viro configere audes?” “At ego, puer, ut aīs, imberbis, dum oves patris pasco, ipse manu et leonem et ursum interfeci, neque ego hujus hominis verba timeo. Deus enim, qui me de leone liberavit, me de manu hostis liberabit.” Tum rex, tanta pueri audacia attonitus, galeam et loricam et gladium suum dedit. Respondet ille “Harum rerum usum non habeo.” Tulit autem baculum suum, quod semper in manibus habebat, et quinque lapides de torrente elit, fundamque manu tulit. Ita armatus adversus hostem procedit. Hostis autem, puerum videns, ridet, “Num ego,” inquit, “canis sum? venis enim ad me cum baculo et lapidibus. Hodie pulchrum tuum corpus avibus ferisque dabo.” Tum puer, “Tu venis ad me cum gladio et hasta et

clipeo ; ego ad te, Deo adjutore, venio." Puer autem unum lapidem tulit, et funda jecit. Hostem lapis in frontem percutit ; pronus ille ad terram decidit. Currit statim puer, et gladium hostis educit : interficit hominem, et caput ejus praecidit. Tum regiae copiae, omni metu liberatae, adversus hostes impetum faciunt : ipsos fundunt fugantque, castra omnium rerum plena capiunt.

## SECTION 107.

VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE : INDICATIVE MOOD.

**Audiri**, *to be heard.*

Present : Audior, *I am heard.*

Future : Audiar, *I shall be heard.*

Imperfect : Audiēbar, *I was (being) heard.*

(301.)

1. Voxne reginae ab omnibus civibus audiri potest ?
2. Num tua vox auditur ? Nonne tacere te jubebam ?
3. Haec castra a militibus septimae legionis muni-  
entur.
4. Magister, a quo pueri erudiebantur, triginta sex  
annos natus est.
5. Naves jam aedificatae, et omnibus rebus ornatae  
erant.

6. Hi pueri pigerrimi jure a magistro punientur.
7. Milites, a quibus castra muniebantur, ad castra mox convenient.
8. Arma omnium generum a milibus navibus imponentur.
9. Ego homo sum miserrimus, a domino puniar.
10. Quid, pessime puer! nonne a magistro punieris?
11. Semper punior; totius classis pigerrimus dico.
12. Regia classis, quae quingentarum navium est, pro portu magno instructa est.

## (302.)

1. These audacious boys will be very severely punished.
2. I was being educated by that master.
3. Soon the birds will be heard in the woods.
4. The ships will soon have been drawn up before the harbour.
5. Will you not be silent? you will be heard by the master.
6. The camp was being fortified by all the soldiers.
7. The messengers were being punished by the leader.
8. The burdens will be put on *board* the ships by the soldiers.
9. The shouts of the enemy were scarcely being heard in the city.
10. Boys, you will scarcely be heard by the masters.

## SECTION 108.

## VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD—(*Continued*).

Perfect:            *Auditus sum, I have been heard, I was heard.*

Future Perfect: *Auditus ero, I shall have been heard.*

Pluperfect:        *Auditus eram, I had been heard.*

(303.)

1. Non eadem a senibus juvenibusque cupientur.
2. Haec opera a pueris mox legentur.
3. Verba tua ab his pueris non intellegentur.
4. Quot milites pro castris telis hostium interficientur?
5. Quoties ab illo magistro puniti eritis?
6. Fortissimi milites e legionibus eligebantur.
7. Equites omnes in unum locum colligentur.
8. Verba Caesaris a militibus vix erant audita.
9. Rebus in adversis quam tibi jucundum fuerit amicorum auxilium!
10. Quid! num castra aggere iam munita erant?
11. Illud flumen, illa silva, isti horti vestri, quam saepe nos delectavere!
12. Milites sextae septimaeque legionis pro castris instructi sunt.

## (304.)

1. The swiftest horses were being chosen.
2. He was understanding scarcely three words of the speech.
3. All the arms were being collected into one place.
4. They were killing the birds; they will be punished.
5. The camp had been fortified by all the soldiers.
6. The boys will have been punished very often.
7. How many words did you hear?—We heard the whole speech.
8. The slaves had been punished by their master.
9. The shouts of the sailors had not been heard on the shore.
10. The birds were often being heard in the summer; now they cannot be heard.

## (305.)

1. Quot nomina a te audita sunt?—Tria verba vix audiui.
2. Quoties ab illo magistro puniti estis?—Nescimus.
3. Naves omnes in superiore portu collectae sunt.
4. Estne bene dormitum?—Optime totam noctem dormitum est.
5. Quam est jucundum ab omnibus amari laudarique!
6. Pueri, qui verba magistri contemnebant, puniti sunt.
7. Castra altissimo aggere munita sunt.
8. Hic puer se colligere incipit.

9. Arma hostium a militibus collecta sunt.
10. Non est jucundum cotidie culpari, cotidie puniri!
11. Clamores miserarum mulierum tota urbe auditи sunt.
12. Vox tua vix audita est, nam illi pueri nunquam tacent.

(306.)

1. The camp has been fortified; the soldiers are under arms.
2. These books are read by everybody.
3. The words of the messenger were not being heard.
4. The boys were punished yesterday by their father.
5. All the soldiers had been led into camp.
6. These boys were being punished more often than those.
7. The girls were taught by their mother.
8. The boys' shouts were being heard by the master.
9. The girl was punished by her mother and praised by her father.
10. It is better to be warned than to be punished.

## XXVIII.

### Bacchus and the Pirates.

Praedones quidam puerum in litore stantem vident. Statim proprius navi accedunt. Vestes eius splendidas comasque flavas conspiciunt. Eum filium regis esse crediderunt. Dux igitur praedonum comitibus clamat, "Heus! comites, ad litus celeriter navem appellite! puerum statim

navi tollemus. Non sine multa pecunia, credo, patri regio puerum reddemus." Jussa ducis nautae celeriter faciunt. Puerum validis compedibus vinciunt. Subito autem puer leviter subrisit? compedes, velut arte magica, decidunt. Tum unus ex nautis sociis dixit, "En! deus hic certo est, vel dei filius! ventos in navem incitat, et nos non navem solum, sed vitam etiam amitteremus. Puerum divinum statim in litore exponite!" Socii autem credere noluerunt. At ille puer subito verba quaedam murmurat: tum multa et mira prodigia videntur! Mālus enim navis se in vitem convortit, prora coronis floreis ornatur, vinum tota navi fluit. Leo ingens saevusque in prora stat, iratusque fremit. Quid! ipsum etiam mare oculis velut prata videtur; ubi spuma fuit, nunc albae rosae sunt; neque fluctuum murmura, sed velut pecorum voces arboresque, vento agitatae, audiuntur. Nautae autem, magno superati metu, se in mare projiciunt—in delphines statim convortuntur. Tum puer, dum leoni vinum e calice aureo dat, nautae, qui solum restat puerumque deum esse dixerat, "Recte tu quidem dixisti: Bacchus sum, Semeles filius. Tu autem omnem depone timorem, comes dei semper eris, vitamque laetam ages."

## XXIX.

Gaius Mucius Scaevola.

Dum Etrusci aliquando Romam obsident, Gaius Mucius, adulescens nobilis, consilium audacissimum init. Nam penetrare in hostium castra, et ipsum regem Porsinam interficere, constituit. Ferrum igitur intra vestem abdit, et castra hostium clavis intrat. Ingens ibi turba prope

regium tribunal adstat; nam forte militibus stipendium datur. Scriba autem cum rege pari fere ornatu sedebat: eum milites vulgo adeunt. Mucius igitur, qui regis faciem ignorabat, neque rogare milites audebat, ferrum arripit, et scribam pro rege obtruncat. Tum sibi ipse per trepidam turbam viam facit; sed milites regii juvenem comprehendunt, et ad regem retrahunt. Clamat rex, "Quis te ad hoc facinus adduxit?" et milites statim ignem adferre jubet. Tum Mucius, "Civis Romanus sum, neque ignem timeo," et statim dextram manum in flammarum injicit, neque torrentem retrahit. Rex, tanta audacia attonitus, milites juvenem ab flammis amovere jubet. "Te vero, tantac virtutis juvenem, liberum dimitto." Tum Mucius callide, "Quia," inquit, "meam virtutem honoravisti, tibi aperiam quod scire cupiebas. Nos trecenti, principes juventutis Romanae, in mortem tuam conjuravimus. Forte ego eorum primus fui; ceteri, suo quisque tempore, aderunt." Rex, his verbis conterritus, pacem cum Romanis facit, et exercitum reducit.

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

(307.)

1. The number of leaves is large.
2. The legion has three thousand soldiers.
3. No one ought to despise the common people.
4. Where is the royal crown? Do you know?
5. That wicked thief fears the faces of men.
6. Of the flowers some are white, others red.
7. The bones of many animals are known to us.

8. The words of their fathers and mothers are praised by the boys.
9. The colour of the girl's dress is beautiful.
10. The territories of the German tribes are very broad.
11. All the captives have been set free by the leader.
12. I shall always remember your judgments.

(308.)

1. The citizens will not be satisfied with this law.
2. This rampart is very high : we do not fear the enemy.
3. The birds place their little homes on the top of the oaks.
4. He was pouring cold water on the white ashes.
5. On the right hand *there were* great marshes, on the left *there was* a broad river.
6. The best part of us is not the heart, but the mind.
7. Spring is very pleasant, winter is very troublesome.
8. Many animals have a longer life than men.
9. The broad beech-trees are welcome to all in the summer months.
10. The conversation of this orator was very witty.
11. Put all your books on to this table !
12. A great city, the capital of the whole kingdom, is being besieged.

(309.)

1. The eyes of boys are keener than those of old men.
2. We have been kept at home for three days by these showers.
3. That speech will have been very useful to the commonwealth.
4. This poplar is a very high, and a very beautiful, tree.
5. Our soldiers will be tired with their very long march.
6. These birds *are* very big, those *are* very small.

7. Peace is very welcome to the best citizens, very annoying to the worst.
8. This ship is said to be the quickest of all.
9. The woman's hands are red with the blood of the king (adj.)
10. Riches are *dear* to all men, wisdom is dear to few.
11. We ought to love justice, to avoid injustice.
12. Your undertaking will be praised by Marcus, a wise man.

(310.)

1. The wretched ships are driven on to the rocks by the rush of the waves.
2. The enemy make frequent sallies from the two gates of the camp.
3. One of the two armies *marches* into the territories of the Gauls, the other marches into those of the Germans.
4. Adversity is sometimes useful to lazy men.
5. You do not inform me of these matters every day.
6. Not to us only, but to all your friends, your arrival will be very welcome.
7. Do you not see this great cloud of dust? It is very troublesome to the eyes.
8. Our ancestors are dead, but we shall always cherish their memory.
9. The mind ought to rule the body.
10. This treaty is honourable, neither to us, nor to you.
11. These boys prefer everything to books.
12. In vain were the knights being drawn up; they feared the enemy.

(311.)

1. Rest is often more welcome to old men than to boys.
2. What can be more glorious than an honourable old age?

3. To-day we shall fortify the camp, to-morrow we shall fight with (*cum*) the enemy.
4. Farewell, my friends ! it is time to set sail.
5. The enemy will be here in a short time, but Caesar is very far off.
6. To many of us riches are dearer than virtue.
7. The thieves will fear, neither the words of the judge, nor the murmurs of the common people.
8. Your teeth, boy, are very sharp ! you have wounded my hand !
9. The greater part of this district is inhabited by sailors.
10. The neighbouring tribes are very brave in war.
11. Some of the boys are punished, others are blamed. •
12. Balbus is now returning to the undertaking.

## (312.)

1. In the month of January I always stay at home.
2. The soldiers of the tenth legion make a great slaughter of the Gauls.
3. He cannot set you free from debt ; he himself has no money.
4. Do you call me lazy ? I am never lazy.
5. Why do you gather those flowers ? to whom will you give them ?
6. Infantry forces are often more useful than cavalry in war.
7. You have a larger number of books in your room, but you never read them.
8. You are very daring ! do you fear nothing ?
9. They will have joined their forces with (*cum*) the auxiliary troops.
10. When will you come ? I will come to-morrow, in the evening.
11. Neither Balbus nor Caius can understand these words of Cicero.
12. Frequent messengers were being sent in vain to Caesar.

## (313.)

[Exx. 313-318 are mainly on the different meanings of Latin words.]

1. The smallest things often delight boys' minds.
2. We shall receive your words in a most grateful spirit.
3. We have all been charmed by the manners of your brothers.
4. The very bad character of that boy has been blamed by all.
5. The habits of ancient times are often better than those of our *times*.
6. The fleet consisted of (was of) five hundred ships.
7. The boys of the first class always help the younger boys.
8. In early spring the birds come into our garden.
9. The legions defeated far larger forces of the enemy yesterday.
10. They not only cross high mountains, but also finish their march.
11. Where will you put these things?—We will put them in your room.
12. The whole matter will be understood by few.

## (314.)

1. Virtue is better by far than riches.
2. Who will not praise the great courage of the soldiers?
3. Our right flank was being thrown into confusion by the enemy.
4. There was a broad river on the right side, a very high hill on the left.
5. A few were finishing the work, the rest were doing nothing.

6. These old men lead a very happy life.
7. The whole fleet of three hundred ships will be driven on to the shore by the wind.
8. The whole fleet comes into harbour in a long line.
9. They rout and put to flight the first ranks of the enemy.
10. I have awaited you for four hours : where have you been ?
11. Do you not see the messengers, who are returning to the camp ?
12. These captives seem to be very miserable.

(315.)

1. Your ancestors are very famous, but you yourself are a very wicked man.
2. What can be more pleasant than that girl's clear voice ?
3. The enemy make a very spirited charge on our men, and our men form circles.
4. In the whole world the courage of the Roman soldiers was known.
5. Greater waves than these I shall not see again.
6. Which of the *two* brothers is the elder ?—Alexander is the elder by three years.
7. The memory of their celebrated ancestors is cherished by the old men.
8. Nothing is too difficult (comp.) for the human race.
9. There are many kinds of men : some *are* lazy, others are active.
10. You ought to do this for the sake of the commonwealth.
11. The messengers are present ; the shouts of the soldiers are heard.
12. This very just man always helps his servants.

## (316.)

1. This stream pours a large weight of waters into the sea.
2. The soldiers of the seventh legion rout and put to flight the enemy.
3. This girl is very beautiful, but her sister is far more beautiful.
4. What can be more glorious than to have been useful to the commonwealth ?
5. Did you not owe much money to that merchant ?
6. Ought we to do everything for the sake of our friends ?
7. The cause of this defeat is known, neither to you, nor to me.
8. The ships cannot set sail from the higher harbour.
9. Our bridges are being broken up by the enemy.
10. I shall lead out greater forces than I had last year.
11. The enemy with the greatest audacity seize the hill.
12. The girls were sitting in front of the house.

## (317.)

1. The soldiers finish the whole work in one hour.
2. The works of Cicero are neither very easy, nor very difficult.
3. This burden is very heavy : who can carry it ?
4. Your wound is very severe, my brother !
5. Your plan is very good, and very useful.
6. He forms a very wise plan.
7. A larger number of the enemy will be taken *prisoners* by our men.
8. The ships of war are not able to make the harbour.
9. In my adversity your arrival was very welcome.
10. The sailors cannot set sail with an unfavourable wind.

11. Who owns this house and that garden ?
12. You have been very well educated, but you seem the worst of all the boys.

## (318.)

1. On the top of the oak the birds sing in the summer months.
2. In the height of the summer this city is said not to be very healthy.
3. The cavalry come to Caesar with the utmost speed, and inform him about these matters.
4. Demosthenes and Cicero are consummate orators ; the former *was* a Greek, the latter was a Roman.
5. Your honesty is extreme : I give you the highest praise.
6. These animals have huge horns and huge feet.
7. Caesar places all the cavalry on the left wing.
8. The water of this fountain is sweeter to-day than it was yesterday.
9. What can be more pleasant than to be in the country ?
10. Did I not inform you of your friend's arrival ?—Can I remember everything ?
11. Some of the boys were sitting at home.
12. By all good men wisdom is preferred to riches.

## (319.)

## [The Infinitive Mood.]

1. All the soldiers will be ordered by the leader to come together.
2. I was often ordering you to be silent : be silent at once !
3. To say is very easy (neut.), to do is often of all things the most difficult.

4. That king is said to have reigned for twenty-one years.
5. It is not always easy to avoid danger.
6. To rule is often a very difficult thing.
7. He orders the soldiers to fortify the camp with the utmost speed.
8. All the forces cannot be led out from the camp at once.
9. Why do you always say the same things? no one likes to hear always the same things.
10. Our men are not able to overcome the huge multitude of the enemy.
11. The boys begin to collect their thoughts (*mens*).
12. The girl cannot understand her master's words.

(320.)

[Exx. 320, 321, are on the use of *in*.]

1. Even (*etiam*) in the height of summer the summits of the highest mountains are white.
2. I never fall *into debt*, you are always falling into debt.
3. At midnight all the enemy's forces were coming together.
4. In summer the days, in the winter the nights, are longer.
5. The enemy were throwing darts at our column for three hours.
6. Your sister was pouring very cold water on to the head of her little brother.
7. In our city there are many trees; *in* the whole of your city there is no tree.
8. The flocks fall into the river, and the matter is not known to their keepers.
9. The red wine will be poured into the king's cup.

10. We were making a very strong bridge over (*in*, abl.) the river.
11. The king puts the orator's likeness in his room.
12. Put the flowers on the table at once.

## 321.

1. The enemy were making many charges on our left flank.
2. I am deaf in this ear, and lame in that foot.
3. The merchant built for himself a beautiful house on the top of the hill.
4. The ambassadors inform Caesar about their affairs in a very long speech.
5. What! have you nothing on your head? do you not fear the summer sun?
6. They cannot come to you in the morning; they always work at that time.
7. We are never well in Rome; the city is not very healthy.
8. The poet lived in Italy for twenty years.
9. The voices of the soldiers will be heard *over* the whole city.
10. In the summer months the sun is sometimes very troublesome.
11. These boys will have been more often punished than praised.
12. Why, soldiers, do you not at once make a charge on the enemy?—Caesar's arrival is awaited.

## (322.)

[The remaining exercises are on the pronouns.]

1. He who always praises himself is a troublesome *person*.
2. Where is your friend Marcus?—I shall see him to-morrow.

3. Marcus and his brother always praise their own diligence.
4. The merchant, to whom you owe the money, will come to-morrow.
5. Where are the flowers, whose beautiful colours have often been praised?
6. The boy, to whom you were giving help, is always praising you.
7. The man, whose witty conversation charmed you, is a friend of Marcus's.
8. The soldiers will kill the hostages, of whom they have a large number.
9. The merchants, to whom you were paying the money, are very wicked men.
10. The girl, whose brother is known to you, is very pretty.
11. The audacity of those men is very great.
12. This book has been judged by the wisest men to be better than that.

## (323.)

1. Where are those boys, whose diligence the master often praised?
2. The master blamed, not me only, but all the other boys also.
3. In which ear are you deaf, Balbus?—What do you say?—I said nothing.
4. Some *were* never *silent*, others *were* always silent.
5. I, to whom you owe everything, ask your aid!
6. Julia and her brother were in very good health.
7. The forces of the whole of Germany are coming together.
8. Where are my books?—Your brother has them.
9. We all ought to be mindful of our neighbour.

10. A few remain at home, the rest are in the public gardens.
11. This man is the braver, that the wiser.
12. The boy who was punished yesterday is now first.

## (324.)

1. No one will wish adversity for himself.
2. You will not, will you, boys, be forgetful of your mothers, to whom you owe everything ?
3. The soldiers have seized the camp, which the enemy had fortified on the top of the hill.
4. The boy will come in his own time. Have you awaited him long ?
5. Who can read those books of yours ? they are very bad books.
6. Who will praise that boy, whose bad habits are known to all ?
7. Who informed you of this matter ? What ! were you not yourself informing me of these matters ?
8. He blames his master ; he ought to blame himself.
9. Who said this ?—You yourself said it.
10. To which of the two boys do you give the highest praise ?
11. You, who are a soldier, will not be frightened by these shouts.
12. You do not seem to understand the book which you are reading.



## CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS.

**Esse, to be.**

For the Indicative, see pp. 158-166.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. Es, esto, esto,	<i>{ Be thou let him be.</i>	Plur. Este, estōte, suntō,	<i>{ Be ye let them be.</i>
-----------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------	---------------------------------

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. Sim, sis, sit,	<i>I may be thou mayst be he may be.</i>	Plur. Simus, sitis, sint,	<i>We may be ye may be they may be.</i>
----------------------------	--	---------------------------------	---

### IMPERFECT.

Sing. Essem or forem, esses or fores, esset or foret,	<i>{ I might be thou mightst be he might be.</i>	Plur. Essēmus or forēmus, essētis or forētis, essent or forent,	<i>{ We might be ye might be they might be.</i>
--	--	--	---

### PERFECT.

Sing. Fuērim, I may have been fueris, thou mayst have been fuerit, he may have been.	Plur. Fuerimus, We may have been fueritis, ye may have been fuerint, they may have been.
--	--

### PLUPERFECT.

S. Fuissem, I should fuisse, fuisset,	<i>{ thou wouldst he would</i>	<i>{ have</i>	P. Fuissēmus, We should fuissētis, fuissent,	<i>{ have</i>
		<i>{ been.</i>		<i>{ been.</i>

### INFINITIVE.

PRESENT, PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT, FUTURE, FUTURE PARTICIPLE,	Esse, Fuisse, Fore or futūrus esse, Futurus,	to be. to have been. to be about to be. about to be.
---	---	---

## FIRST CONJUGATION: ACTIVE.

*Amāre, to love.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.	<b>Amo,</b> amas, amat,	<i>I love</i> <i>thou lovest</i> <i>he loves.</i>	Plur.	<b>Amāmus,</b> amātis, amant,	<i>We love</i> <i>ye love</i> <i>they love.</i>
-------	-------------------------------	---	-------	-------------------------------------	---

## FUTURE.

Sing.	<b>Amābo,</b> amabis, amabit,	<i>I shall love</i> <i>thou wilt love</i> <i>he will love.</i>	Plur.	<b>Amabimus,</b> amabitis, amabunt,	<i>We shall love</i> <i>ye will love</i> <i>they will love.</i>
-------	-------------------------------------	--	-------	---	---

## IMPERFECT.

Sing.	<b>Amābam,</b> amabas, amabat,	<i>I was loving</i> <i>thou wast loving</i> <i>he was loving.</i>	Plur.	<b>Amabāmus,</b> amabātis, amabant,	<i>We were loving</i> <i>ye were loving</i> <i>they were loving.</i>
-------	--------------------------------------	---	-------	---	--

## PERFECT.

Sing.	<b>Amāvi,</b> amavisti, amavit,	<i>I have loved, or</i> <i>I loved</i> <i>thou hast loved,</i> <i>or thou lovest</i> <i>he has loved, or</i> <i>he loved.</i>	Plur.	<b>Amavimus,</b> amavistis, amaverunt,	<i>We have loved,</i> <i>or we loved,</i> <i>ye have loved,</i> <i>or ye loved,</i> <i>they have loved,</i> <i>or amavēre,</i> } <i>or they loved.</i>
-------	---------------------------------------	--	-------	--	---

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Sing.	<b>Amavēro,</b> amaveris, amaverit,	<i>I shall have</i> } <i>loved.</i>	P.	<b>Amaverīmus,</b> amaverītis, amaverint,	<i>We shall have</i> } <i>loved.</i>
-------	---	--	----	---	---

## PLUPERFECT.

Sing.	<b>Amavēram,</b> amaveras, amaverat,	<i>I had loved</i> <i>thou hadst loved</i> <i>he had loved.</i>	Plur.	<b>Amaverāmus,</b> amaveratis, amaverant,	<i>We had loved</i> <i>ye had loved</i> <i>they had loved.</i>
-------	--	---	-------	---	--

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<b>Amā,</b> amato, amato,	<i>Love thou</i> } <i>let him love.</i>	Plur.	<b>Amāte,</b> amatōte, amanto,	<i>Love ye</i> } <i>let them love.</i>
-------	---------------------------------	--	-------	--------------------------------------	---

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. Amēm,	<i>I may love</i>	Plur. Amēmus,	<i>We may love</i>
ames,	<i>thou mayst love</i>	amētis,	<i>ye may love</i>
amet,	<i>he may love.</i>	ament,	<i>they may love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

Sing. Amārem,	<i>I might love</i>	Plur. Amarēmus,	<i>We might love</i>
amares,	<i>thou mightst love</i>	amarētis,	<i>ye might love</i>
amaret,	<i>he might love.</i>	amarent,	<i>they might love.</i>

## PERFECT.

S. Amāvērim,	<i>I may have loved</i>	P. Amaverīmus,	<i>We may have loved</i>
amaveris,	<i>thou mayst have loved</i>	amaveritis,	<i>ye may have loved</i>
amaverit,	<i>he may have loved.</i>	amaverint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

S. Amavissem,	<i>I should have loved</i>	P. Amavissēmus,	<i>We should have loved</i>
amavisses,	<i>thou wouldst have loved</i>	amavissētis,	<i>ye would have loved</i>
amavisset,	<i>he would have loved.</i>	amavissent,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	<b>Amāre,</b>	<i>to love</i>
PREF. and PLUP.,	<b>amavisse,</b>	<i>to have loved</i>
FUTURE,	<b>amatūrus esse,</b>	<i>to be about to love.</i>

## GERUND.

Acc.	Amandum,	<i>loving</i>	Amātum,	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	amandi,	<i>of loving</i>	amatu,	<i>in loving, or to be loved.</i>
Dat. &	amando,	{ <i>to or by</i>		
Abl. }		<i>loving.</i>		

## SUPINES.

PRESENT,	<b>Amans</b> ( <i>Gen. amantis</i> ),	<i>loving.</i>
FUTURE,	<b>amatūrus</b> ( <i>a. um</i> ),	<i>about to love.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION : ACTIVE.

**Mōnēre**, *to advise.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Moneo, mones, monet,	<i>I advise</i> <i>thou advisest</i> <i>he advises.</i>	<i>P.</i> Monēmus, monētis, monent,	<i>We advise</i> <i>ye advise</i> <i>they advise.</i>
--------------------------------------	---	---	---

## FUTURE.

<i>S.</i> Monēbo, monebis, monebit,	<i>I shall advise</i> <i>thou wilt advise</i> <i>he will advise.</i>	<i>P.</i> Monebimus, monebitis, monebunt,	<i>We shall advise</i> <i>ye will advise</i> <i>they will advise.</i>
---	--	---	---

## IMPERFECT.

<i>S.</i> Monēbam, monebas, monebat,	<i>I was advising</i> <i>thou wast advising</i> <i>he was advising.</i>	<i>P.</i> Monebāmus, monebātis, monebānt,	<i>We were advising</i> <i>ye were advising</i> <i>they were advising.</i>
--	---	---	--

## PAST.

<i>S.</i> Monui, monuisti, monuit,	<i>I have advised,</i> <i>I advised</i> <i>thou hast advised,</i> <i>thou advisedst</i> <i>he has advised,</i> <i>he advised.</i>	<i>P.</i> Monuīmus, monuītis, monuīrunt, or monuēre,	<i>We have advised,</i> <i>we advised</i> <i>ye have advised,</i> <i>ye advised</i> <i>they have advised,</i> <i>or they advised.</i>
--	--	---	--

## FUTURE PAST.

<i>S.</i> Monuēro, monueris, monuerit,	<i>I shall advise</i> <i>thou wilt advise</i> <i>he will advise</i>	<i>P.</i> Monuerimus, monueritis, monuerint,	<i>We shall advise</i> <i>ye will advise</i> <i>they will advise.</i>
--	---	--	---

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>S.</i> Monuēram, monueras, monuerat,	<i>I had advised</i> <i>thou hadst advised</i> <i>he had advised.</i>	<i>P.</i> Monuerāmus, monuerātis, monuerānt,	<i>We had advised</i> <i>ye had advised</i> <i>they had advised.</i>
---	---	--	--

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>S.</i> Monē, } monēto, } monēto,	<i>Advise thou</i> <i>let him advise.</i>	<i>P.</i> Monēte, } monetōte, } monento,	<i>Advise ye</i> <i>let them advise.</i>
---	--	--	---

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Moneām,	I may advise	P. Moneāmus,	We may advise
moneas,	thou mayst advise	moneātis,	ye may advise
moneat,	he may advise	moneant,	they may advise.

## IMPERFECT.

S. Monērem,	I might advise	P. Monerēmus,	We might advise
moneres,	thou mightst advise	monerētis,	ye might advise
moneret,	he might advise	monerent,	they might advise.

## PERFECT.

S. Monuērim,	I may advise	P. Monuerīmus,	We may advise
monueris,	thou mayst advise	monuerītis,	ye may advise
monuerit,	he may advise	monuerint,	they may advise

## PLUPERFECT.

S. Monuissem,	I should advise	P. Monuissēmus,	We should advise
monuisses,	thou wouldst advise	monuissētis,	ye would advise
monuisset,	he would advise	monuissent,	they would advise

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	Monēre,	to advise
PERF. and PLUP.,	Monuisse,	to have advised
FUTURE,	monitūrus esse	to be about to advise.

## GERUND.

Acc.	Monendum,	advising		Monitūm, to advise.
Gen.	monendi,	of advising		
Dat.	monendo,	to or by advising		monitu, in advising, or to be advised.
Abl.		visiting.		

## SUPINES.

Monitūm, to advise.
monitu, in advising, or to be advised.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT,	Monens (-entis),	advising
FUTURE,	Monitūrus (a, um),	about to advise.

## THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE.

**Rēgēre, to rule.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Rēgo, regis, regit,	<i>I rule</i> <i>thou rulest</i> <i>he rules.</i>	<i>P.</i> Regīmus, regītis, regunt,	<i>We rule</i> <i>ye rule.</i> <i>they rule.</i>
-------------------------------------	---	---	--

## FUTURE.

<i>S.</i> Regam, regēs, reget,	<i>I shall rule</i> <i>thou wilt rule</i> <i>he will rule.</i>	<i>P.</i> Regēmus, regētis, regent,	<i>We shall rule</i> <i>ye will rule</i> <i>they will rule.</i>
--------------------------------------	--	---	---

## IMPERFECT.

<i>S.</i> Regēbam, regebas, regebat,	<i>I was ruling</i> <i>thou wast ruling</i> <i>he was ruling.</i>	<i>P.</i> Regebāmus, regebātis, regebant,	<i>We were ruling</i> <i>ye were ruling</i> <i>they were ruling.</i>
--	---	---	--

## PERFECT.

<i>S.</i> Rexi, rexisti, rexit,	<i>I have ruled, I ruled</i> <i>thou hast ruled, thou ruledst</i> <i>he has ruled, he ruled.</i>	<i>P.</i> Reximus, rexistis, rexerunt or } rexēre,	<i>We have ruled, we ruled</i> <i>ye have ruled, ye ruled</i> <i>they have ruled, they rule.</i>
---------------------------------------	--	--	--

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>S.</i> Rexero, rexeris, rexerit,	<i>I shall have ruled thou wilt have ruled he will have ruled</i>	<i>P.</i> Rexerimus, rexeritis, rexerint,	<i>We shall have ruled ye will have ruled they will have ruled</i>
---	---	---	--

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>S.</i> Rexeram, rexeras, rexerat,	<i>I had ruled thou hadst ruled he had ruled.</i>	<i>P.</i> Rexerāmus, rexerātis, rexerant,	<i>We had ruled ye had ruled they had ruled.</i>
--	---	---	--

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>S.</i> Regē, { regito, { regito,	<i>Rule thou let him rule.</i>	<i>P.</i> Regite, { regitōte, { regunto,	<i>Rule ye let them rule.</i>
---	------------------------------------	--	-----------------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Regam,	<i>I may rule</i>	P. Regāmus,	<i>We may rule</i>
regas,	<i>thou mayst rule</i>	regātis,	<i>ye may rule</i>
regat,	<i>he may rule.</i>	regant,	<i>they may rule.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

S. Regērem,	<i>I might rule</i>	P. Regerēmus,	<i>We might rule</i>
regeres,	<i>thou mightst rule</i>	regerētis,	<i>ye might rule</i>
regeret,	<i>he might rule.</i>	regerent,	<i>they might rule.</i>

## PERFECT.

S. Rexērim,	<i>I may</i>	P. Rexerīmus,	<i>We may</i>
rexeris,	<i>thou mayst</i>	rexerītis,	<i>ye may</i>
rexerit,	<i>he may</i>	rexerint,	<i>they may</i>

} have                   } have  
                        } ruled.           } ruled.

## PLUPERFECT.

S. Rexissem,	<i>I might</i>	P. Rexissēmus,	<i>We might</i>
rexisses,	<i>thou mightst</i>	rexissētis,	<i>ye might</i>
rexisset,	<i>he might</i>	rexissent,	<i>they might</i>

} have                   } have  
                        } ruled.           } ruled.

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	Regēre,	<i>to rule</i>
PERFECT,	rexisse,	<i>to have ruled</i>
FUTURE,	rectūrus esse,	<i>to be about to rule.</i>

## GERUND.

Acc.	Regendūm,	<i>ruling</i>	Rectūm,	<i>to rule</i>
Gen.	regendi,	<i>of ruling</i>	rectu,	<i>in ruling, or</i>
Dat. and }	regendo,	{ <i>to or by</i>		<i>to be ruled</i>
Abl.    {		{ <i>ruling.</i>		

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, Regens (-entis),	<i>ruling</i>
FUTURE, rectūrus (a, um),	<i>about to rule.</i>

## FOURTH CONJUGATION: ACTIVE.

*Audire, to hear.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. <b>Audio,</b> audis, audit,	<i>I hear thou hearest he hears.</i>	P. <b>Audimus,</b> audītis, audiunt,	<i>We hear ye hear they hear.</i>
--------------------------------------	--	--	---

## FUTURE.

S. <b>Audiam,</b> audies, audiet,	<i>I shall hear thou wilt hear he will hear.</i>	P. <b>Audiēmus,</b> audiētis, audient,	<i>We shall hear ye will hear they will hear.</i>
---	--	--	---

## IMPERFECT.

S. <b>Audiēbam,</b> audiebas, audiebat,	<i>I was hearing thou wast hearing he was hearing.</i>	P. <b>Audiebāmus,</b> audiebātis, audiebant,	<i>We were hearing ye were hearing they were hearing.</i>
---	--	--	---

## PERFECT.

S. <b>Audīvi,</b> audivisti, audivit,	<i>I have heard, or I heard thou hast heard, or thou heardst he has heard, or he heard.</i>	P. <b>Audīvīmus,</b> audivistis, audivērunt } audivēre,	<i>We have heard, or we heard ye have heard, or ye heard they have heard, or they heard.</i>
---	---	---	--

## FUTURE PERFECT.

S. <b>Audīvēro,</b> audiveris, audiverit,	<i>I shall } have thou wilt } heard. he will }</i>	P. <b>Audīvērimus,</b> audiverītis, audiverint,	<i>We shall } have ye will } heard. they will }</i>
---	--	---	---

## PLUPERFECT.

S. <b>Audīvēram,</b> audiveras, audiverat,	<i>I had heard thou hadst heard he had heard.</i>	P. <b>Audiverāmus,</b> audiverātis, audiverant,	<i>We had heard ye had heard they had heard.</i>
--	---	---	--

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. <b>Audi,</b> audito, audito,	<i>Hear thou let him hear.</i>	P. <b>Audite,</b> auditōte, audiunto,	<i>Hear ye let them hear.</i>
---------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---	-----------------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Audiām;</i>	<i>I may hear</i>	<i>P. Audiāmus,</i>	<i>We may hear</i>
<i>audiās,</i>	<i>thou mayst hear</i>	<i>audiātis,</i>	<i>ye may hear</i>
<i>audiāt,</i>	<i>he may hear.</i>	<i>audiānt,</i>	<i>they may hear.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<i>S. Audiēm,</i>	<i>I might hear</i>	<i>P. Audiēmus,</i>	<i>We might hear</i>
<i>audiēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst hear</i>	<i>audiētis,</i>	<i>ye might hear</i>
<i>audiēret,</i>	<i>he might hear.</i>	<i>audiērent,</i>	<i>they might hear.</i>

## PERFECT.

<i>S. Audiērim,</i>	<i>I may</i>	<i>P. Audiērimus,</i>	<i>We may</i>
<i>audiēris,</i>	<i>thou mayst</i>	<i>audiēritis,</i>	<i>ye may</i>
<i>audiērit,</i>	<i>he may</i>	<i>audiērint,</i>	<i>they may</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>S. Audiēssem,</i>	<i>I should</i>	<i>P. Audiēssēmus,</i>	<i>We should</i>
<i>audiēsset,</i>	<i>thou wouldst</i>	<i>audiēssētis,</i>	<i>ye would</i>
<i>audiēsset,</i>	<i>he would</i>	<i>audiēssēnt,</i>	<i>they would</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>PRESENT,</i>	<i>Audiēre,</i>	<i>to hear</i>
<i>PERFECT,</i>	<i>audiēsse,</i>	<i>to have heard</i>
<i>FUTURE,</i>	<i>auditūrus esse,</i>	<i>to be about to hear.</i>

## GERUND.

<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Audiēdum,</i>	<i>hearing</i>	<i>SUPINES.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>audiēndi,</i>	<i>of hearing</i>	
<i>Dat. and</i>	<i>audi-</i>	<i>{ to or by</i>	<i>Audiētum,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>endo,</i>	<i>{ hearing.</i>	<i>audiētū,</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRESENT,</i>	<i>Audiens (-entis),</i>	<i>hearing</i>
<i>FUTURE,</i>	<i>auditūrus (a, um),</i>	<i>about to hear.</i>

## FIRST CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

*Amāri, to be loved.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Amor,</i>	<i>I am loved</i>	<i>P. Amāmur,</i>	<i>We are loved</i>
<i>amāris or amāre,</i>	<i>thou art loved</i>	<i>amamīni,</i>	<i>ye are loved</i>
<i>amatur,</i>	<i>he is loved.</i>	<i>amantur,</i>	<i>they are loved.</i>

## FUTURE.

<i>S. Amābor,</i>	<i>I shall be loved</i>	<i>P. Amabīmur,</i>	<i>We shall be loved</i>
<i>amabēris or amabēre,</i>	<i>thou wilt be loved</i>	<i>amabimīni,</i>	<i>ye will be loved</i>
<i>amabitur,</i>	<i>he will be loved.</i>	<i>amabuntur,</i>	<i>they will be loved.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<i>S. Amābar,</i>	<i>I was being loved</i>	<i>P. Amabāmur,</i>	<i>We were being loved</i>
<i>amabāris or amabāre,</i>	<i>thou wast being loved</i>	<i>amabamīni,</i>	<i>ye were being loved</i>
<i>amabatur,</i>	<i>he was being loved.</i>	<i>amabantur,</i>	<i>they were being loved.</i>

## PERFECT.

<i>S. Amātus sum,</i>	<i>I have been loved, or was loved</i>	<i>P. Amati sumus,</i>	<i>We have been loved, or were loved</i>
<i>amatus es,</i>	<i>thou hast been loved, or wast loved</i>	<i>amati estis,</i>	<i>ye have been loved, or were loved</i>
<i>amatus est,</i>	<i>he has been loved, or was loved.</i>	<i>amati sunt,</i>	<i>they have been loved, or were loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>S. Amātus ero,</i>	<i>I shall have</i>	<i>P. Amati erimus,</i>	<i>We shall have</i>
<i>amatus eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have</i>	<i>amati eritis,</i>	<i>ye will have</i>
<i>amatus erit,</i>	<i>he will have</i>	<i>amati erunt,</i>	<i>they will have</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>S. Amātus eram,</i>	<i>I had</i>	<i>P. Amati eramus,</i>	<i>We had</i>
<i>amatus eras;</i>	<i>thou hadst</i>	<i>amati eratis,</i>	<i>ye had</i>
<i>amatus erat,</i>	<i>he had</i>	<i>amati erant,</i>	<i>they had</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. Amāre,	<i>Be thou loved</i>	P. Amāmīni,	<i>Be ye loved</i>
amātor,	<i>let him be loved.</i>	amantor,	<i>let them be loved.</i>
amator,			

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Amer,	<i>I may be loved</i>	P. Amēmur,	<i>We may be loved</i>
amēris or }      amēre,	<i>thou mayst be loved</i>	amēmīni,	<i>ye may be loved</i>
amēre,	<i>he may be loved.</i>	amentur,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

S. Amārer,	<i>I might be loved</i>	P. Amarēmur,	<i>We might be loved</i>
amarēris or }      amarēre,	<i>thou mightst be loved</i>	amarēmīni,	<i>ye might be loved</i>
amarēre,	<i>he might be loved.</i>	amarentur,	<i>they might be loved.</i>

## PERFECT.

S. Amātus sim,	<i>I may have been loved</i>	P. Amati simus,	<i>We may have been loved</i>
amatus sis,	<i>thou mayst have been loved</i>	amati sitis,	<i>ye may have been loved</i>
amatus sit,	<i>he may have been loved.</i>	amati sint,	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

S. Amātus essem,	<i>I should have been loved</i>	P. Amati essemus,	<i>We should have been loved</i>
amatus esses,	<i>thou wouldst have been loved</i>	amati essetis,	<i>ye would have been loved</i>
amatus esset,	<i>he would have been loved.</i>	amati essent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.,	Amāri,	<i>to be loved</i>
PERF.,	amātus (a, um) esse,	<i>to have been loved</i>
FUTURE,	amātum iri,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT,	Amātus (a, um),	<i>having been loved</i>
GERUNDIVE,	amandus (a, um),	<i>to be loved.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION : PASSIVE.

*Mōnēri, to be advised.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Moneor, monēris or monēre, monētur,	I am advised thou art advised he is advised.	P. Monēmur, monemini, monentur,	We are advised ye are advised they are advised.
---	--	---------------------------------------	---

## FUTURE.

S. Monēbor, mōnebēris or monebēre, monebitur,	I shall be advised thou wilt be advised he will be advised.	P. Monēbīmur, monebimini, monebuntur,	We shall be advised ye will be advised they will be advised.
--	---	---	--

## IMPERFECT.

S. Monēbar, monebāris or monebāre, monebatur,	I was thou wert he was	P. Monēbāmur, monebamini, monebantur,	We were ye were they were
--	------------------------------	---	---------------------------------

## PERFECT.

S. Monitus sum, I have been, or was advised monitus es, thou hast been, or wast advised monitus est, he has been, or was advised.	P. Moniti sumus, } We have been, or were advised moniti estis, ye have been, or were advised moniti sunt, they have been, or were advised.
--	---

## FUTURE PERFECT.

S. Monitus ero, I shall be advised monitus eris, thou wilt be advised monitus erit, he will be advised	P. Moniti erimus, } We shall be advised moniti eritis, ye will be advised moniti erunt, they will be advised
--	--

## PLUPERFECT.

S. Monitus eram, I had been advised monitus eras, thou hadst been advised monitus erat, he had been advised	P. Moniti eramus, We had been advised moniti eratis, ye had been advised moniti erant, they had been advised
---	--

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>S.</i> Monēre, monētor, monetor,	<i>Be thou advised</i> <i>let him be advised.</i>	<i>P.</i> Monēmini, <i>Be ye advised</i> <i>monentor, let them be advised.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Moneār, <i>I may</i> moneāris <i>or</i> <i>thou</i> moneārē, <i>mayst</i> moneātūr, <i>he may</i>	<i>be advised.</i>	<i>P.</i> Moneāmūr, <i>We may</i> moneamini, <i>ye may</i> moneantur, <i>they may</i>	<i>be advised.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<i>S.</i> Monērēr, <i>I might</i> monerēris <i>or</i> <i>thou</i> monerērē, <i>mightst</i> monerērētūr, <i>he might</i>	<i>be advised.</i>	<i>P.</i> Monerēmūr, <i>They might</i> moneremini, <i>ye might</i> monerentur, <i>they might</i>	<i>be advised.</i>

## PERFECT.

<i>S.</i> Monītūs sim, <i>I may</i> monītūs sis, <i>thou</i> monītūs sit, <i>mayst</i>	<i>have been advised.</i>	<i>P.</i> Monītī simus, <i>We may</i> monītī sitis, <i>ye may</i> monītī sint, <i>they may</i>	<i>have been advised.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>S.</i> Monītūs essem, <i>I should</i> monītūs esses, <i>thou</i> monītūs esset, <i>he would</i>	<i>have been advised.</i>	<i>P.</i> Monītī essemus, <i>We should</i> monītī essetis, <i>ye would</i> monītī essent, <i>they would</i>	<i>have been advised.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	Monēri,	<i>to be advised</i>
PERFECT,	monītūs esse,	<i>to have been advised</i>
FUTURE,	monītūm iri,	<i>to be about to be advised.</i>

## PARTICLES.

PERFECT, *Monītūs, having been advised*  
 GERUNDIVE, *monēndūs, to be advised.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE

*Rēgi, to be ruled.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Regor, regēris regēre, regitūr,	<i>I am ruled</i> <i>or } thou art ruled</i> <i>he is ruled.</i>	P. Rēgimur, regimīni, reguntur,	<i>We are ruled</i> <i>ye are ruled</i> <i>they are ruled.</i>
---	--	---------------------------------------	--

## FUTURE.

S. Regar, regēris regēre, regētūr,	<i>I shall be ruled</i> <i>or } thou wilt be ruled</i> <i>he will be ruled.</i>	P. Regēmur, regēmīni, regentur,	<i>We shall be ruled</i> <i>ye will be ruled</i> <i>they will be ruled.</i>
---	---	---------------------------------------	---

## IMPERFECT.

S. Regēbar, regebāris regebāre, regebatur,	<i>I was being ruled</i> <i>or } thou wast being ruled</i> <i>he was being ruled.</i>	P. Regebāmar, regebamini, regebantur,	<i>We were being ruled</i> <i>ye were being ruled.</i> <i>they were being ruled.</i>
---	---	---	--

## PERFECT.

S. Rectus sum, rectus es, rectus est,	<i>I have been ruled, or was ruled</i> <i>thou hast been ruled, or wust ruled</i> <i>he has been ruled, or was ruled.</i>	P. Recti sumus, recti estis, recti sunt,	<i>We have been ruled, or were ruled</i> <i>ye have been ruled, or were ruled</i> <i>they have been ruled, or were ruled.</i>
---	---	--	---

## FUTURE PERFECT.

S. Rectus ero, rectus eris, rectus erit,	<i>I shall have been ruled</i> <i>thou wilt have been ruled</i> <i>he will have been ruled.</i>	P. Recti erimus, recti eritis, recti erunt,	<i>We shall have been ruled</i> <i>ye will have been ruled</i> <i>they will have been ruled.</i>
--	---	---	--

## PLUPERFECT.

S. Rectus eram, rectus eras, rectus erat,	<i>I had been ruled</i> <i>thou hadst ruled</i> <i>he had ruled.</i>	P. Recti eramus, recti eratis, recti erant,	<i>We had been ruled</i> <i>ye had been ruled</i> <i>they had been ruled.</i>
---	--	---	---

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. Regēre, regitor, regitor,	<i>Be thou ruled let him be ruled.</i>	P. Regimini, reguntor,	<i>Be ye ruled let them be ruled.</i>
------------------------------------	--	---------------------------	---

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Regar, regāris or regāre, regatūr,	<i>I may thou mayst he may</i>	<i>be ruled.</i>	P. Regāmur, regamini, regantur,	<i>We may ye may they may</i>	<i>be ruled.</i>
--	--	----------------------	---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	----------------------

## IMPERFECT.

S. Regērer, regerēris or regerēre, regerētur,	<i>I might thou mightst he might</i>	<i>be ruled.</i>	P. Regerēmur, regeremini, regerentur,	<i>We might ye might they might</i>	<i>be ruled.</i>
--	--	----------------------	---	---	----------------------

## PERFECT.

S. Rectus sim, rectus sis, rectus sit,	<i>I may thou mayst he may</i>	<i>have been ruled.</i>	P. Recti simus, recti sitis, recti sint,	<i>We may ye may they may</i>	<i>have been ruled.</i>
---	--	---------------------------------	---	---------------------------------------	---------------------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

S. Rectus essem, rectus esses, rectus esset,	<i>I should thou wouldest he would</i>	<i>have been ruled.</i>	P. Recti essemus, recti esse- tis, recti essent,	<i>We should ye would they would</i>	<i>have been ruled.</i>
---	--	---------------------------------	---	--	---------------------------------

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT, PERFECT, FUTURE,	Rēgi, rectus esse, rectum iri,	<i>to be ruled to have been ruled to be about to be ruled.</i>
---------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--

## PARTICIPLES.

PERF., Rectus, *having been ruled.* | GERUN., Regendus, *to be ruled.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

*Audiri, to be heard.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. <i>Audior,</i> <i>audiōris or</i> <i>audiōre,</i> <i>audiōtūr,</i>	<i>I am heard</i> } <i>thou art heareſt</i> } <i>he is heard.</i>	P. <i>Audiōmur,</i> <i>audiōmīni,</i> <i>audiointur,</i>	<i>We are heard</i> <i>ye are heard</i> <i>they are heard.</i>
--	---	--	--

## FUTURE.

S. <i>Audiar,</i> <i>audiēris or</i> <i>audiēre,</i> <i>audiētūr,</i>	<i>I shall be heard</i> } <i>thou wilt be</i> } <i>heard</i> <i>he will be heard.</i>	P. <i>Audiēmur,</i> <i>audiēmīni,</i> <i>audientur.</i>	<i>We shall be heard</i> <i>ye will be heard</i> <i>they will be heard.</i>
--	--	---	---

## IMPERFECT.

S. <i>Audiēbar,</i> <i>audiēbāris or</i> <i>audiēbāre,</i> <i>audiēbātūr,</i>	<i>I was being</i> <i>heard</i> } <i>thou wast being</i> } <i>heard</i> <i>he was being</i> <i>heard.</i>	P. <i>Audiēbāmur,</i> <i>audiēbamīni,</i> <i>audiēbāntur,</i>	<i>We were being</i> <i>heard</i> <i>ye were being</i> <i>heard</i> <i>they were being</i> <i>heard.</i>
--	--	---	---

## PERFECT.

S. <i>Auditus sum,</i> <i>auditūs es,</i> <i>auditūs est,</i>	<i>I have been</i> <i>heard, or was</i> <i>heard</i> } <i>thou hast been</i> } <i>heard, or wast</i> } <i>heard</i> } <i>he has been</i> } <i>heard, or was</i> } <i>heard.</i>	P. <i>Auditīsumus,</i> <i>auditīestis,</i> <i>auditīsunt,</i>	<i>We have been</i> <i>heard, or were</i> <i>heard</i> <i>ye have been</i> <i>heard, or were</i> <i>heard</i> <i>they have been</i> <i>heard, or were</i> <i>heard.</i>
---	---	---	---

## FUTURE PERFECT.

S. <i>Auditus ero,</i> <i>auditūs eris,</i> <i>auditūs erit,</i>	<i>I shall have</i> } <i>been</i> } <i>heard.</i>	P. <i>Auditīerimus,</i> <i>auditīeritis,</i> <i>auditīerunt,</i>	<i>We shall have</i> } <i>been</i> } <i>heard.</i>
--	---	--	--

## PLUPERFECT.

S. <i>Auditus eram,</i> <i>auditūs eras,</i> <i>auditūs erat,</i>	<i>I had been</i> } <i>heard.</i>	P. <i>Auditīeramus,</i> <i>auditīeratis,</i> <i>auditīerant,</i>	<i>We had been</i> } <i>heard.</i>
---	--------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. <b>Audire,</b>	{	<i>Be thou heard let him be heard.</i>	P. <b>Audiāmini,</b>	<i>Be ye heard</i>
auditor,				<i>audiuntor,</i> <i>let them be heard.</i>
auditor,				

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. <b>Audiar,</b>	{	<i>I may be heard thou mayst be heard he may be heard.</i>	P. <b>Audiāmur,</b>	<i>We may be heard</i>
audiāris or				<i>audiāmini, ye may be heard</i>
audiāre,				<i>audiāntur, they may be heard.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

S. <b>Audirer,</b>	{	<i>I might be heard thou mightst be heard he might be heard.</i>	P. <b>Audirēmur,</b>	<i>We might be heard</i>
audiirēris or				<i>audiiremini, ye might be heard</i>
audiirēre,				<i>audiirentur, they might be heard.</i>

## PERFECT.

S. <b>Auditus sim,</b>	{	<i>I may have been heard thou mayst have been heard he may have been heard.</i>	P. <b>Auditi simus,</b>	<i>We may have been heard</i>
auditus sis,				<i>auditii sitis, ye may have been heard</i>
auditus sit,				<i>auditii sint, they may have been heard.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

S. <b>Auditus essem,</b>	{	<i>I should have been heard thou wouldest have been heard he would have been heard.</i>	P. <b>Auditi essemus,</b>	<i>We should have been heard</i>
auditus esses,				<i>auditii essetis, ye would have been heard</i>
auditus esset,				<i>auditii essent, they would have been heard.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	{	<i>Audiri, auditus esse, auditum iri,</i>	<i>to be heard</i>
PERF. and PLUP.,			<i>to have been heard</i>
FUTURE,			<i>to be about to be heard.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT,	{	<i>Auditus, audiendus,</i>	<i>having been heard.</i>
GERUNDIVE,			<i>to be heard.</i>



## VOCABULARIES TO THE EXERCISES.

## EXERCISES 1, 2.

(Section 2.)

**Puella**, girl.**rōsa**, rose.**Amat**, (*he or she*) loves.**laudat**, praises.**ornat**, decorates, adorns.**Cofnēlia**, *Cornelia*.**Julia**, *Julius*.

## EXERCISES 3, 4.

(Section 3.)

**Epistūla**, letter.**regīna**, queen.**Itālia**, Italy.**Dat**, gives.**Saepe**, often.**semper**, always.

## EXERCISES 5-10.

(Section 4.)

**Amant**, (*they*) love.**dant**, give.**laudant**, praise.**ornant**, decorate, adorn.**hābet**, (*he*) has.**hābent**, (*they*) have.**Hōdiē**, to-day.

## EXERCISES 11-14.

(Section 5.)

**Amīcus**, friend.**servus**, slave.**Vīdet**, (*he*) sees.**vīdent**, (*they*) see.**Marcus**, *Marcus*.

## EXERCISES 15, 16.

(Section 6.)

**Praemīum**, reward.**armā** (plural), arms.**diligentīa** (1st decl.), diligence.**Germānus**, a German.**Delectat**, (*it*) pleases, delights, charms.**delectant**, (*they*) delight charm.**Et**, and.

## EXERCISES 17-20.

(Section 7.)

**Fidūs**, a, um, faithful.**longus**, a, um, long.**multus**, a, um, much, many.**meus**, a, um, my.**tuus**, a, um, your.

## EXERCISES 25-30.

(Section 9.)

**Magister**, *master*. "Magister" is a master of *pupils*; "dominus" is a master, or lord, of *slaves*.

**puer**, *boy*.**vir**, *man*.**Iliber** (declined like *magister*), *boy*.**Miser**, *miserā*, *miserum*, *unhappy*, *wretched*.**pulcher**, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, *beautiful*.

## EXERCISES 31-34.

(Section 10.)

**Hortus**, *garden*.**Balbus**, a name.**Altus**, *a*, *um*, *high*.**gratus**, *a*, *um*, *welcome*.**plenus**, *a*, *um*, *full*.**piger**, *pigra*, *pigrum*, *lazy*.**impiger**, *impigra*, *impigrum*, *active*.**Culpat**, (*he*) *blames*.**culpant**, (*they*) *blame*.**Non**, *not*.

## EXERCISES 35-38.

(Section 11.)

**Nauta**, *sailor*.**poēta**, *poet*.**fagus** (fem.), *beech-tree*.**pōpūlus** (fem.), *poplar*.**Corinthus** (fem.), *Corinth*.**vulgus** (neut.), *the common people*.**Clārus**, *a*, *um*, *celebrated*.**lātus**, *a*, *um*, *broad*, *wide*.In (with the ablative after it), *in*.**Cotidie**, *every day*.

## EXERCISES 39-42.

(Section 12.)

**Clāmor**, *shout*, *shouting*.**mulier**, *woman*.**soror**, *sister*.**Terret**, (*he*) *frightens*.**terrent**, (*they*) *frighten*.**amātūr**, (*he*) *is loved*.**amantūr**, (*they*) *are loved*.**laudātūr**, (*he*) *is praised*.**laudantūr**, (*they*) *are praised*.**A**, *ab*, *by*.**Nunquam**, *never*.

## EXERCISES 43-46.

(Section 13.)

**Mercātor** (gen. sing. *mercatōris*), *merchant*.**orātor** (gen. sing. *oratōris*), *orator*.**majōres** (plural), *ancestors*.**pecūnia**, *money*.**vinum**, *wine*.**Alexander** (gen. sing. *Alexandri*), *Alexander*.

## EXERCISES 47-50.

(Section 14.)

**Frāter** (gen. sing. *fratris*), *brother*.**miles** (gen. sing. *militis*), *soldier*.**rex** (gen. sing. *rēgis*), *king*.**Contentus**, a, um, *content*, *satisfied*.**magnus**, a, um, *large*, *great*  
(*magna pecunia*, *a large sum of money*).**parvus**, a, um, *small*, *little*.**Mē, me.****te**, *you* (accusative, and of one person).

## EXERCISES 51-54.

(Section 15.)

**Civis** (gen. sing. *civis*), *citizen*.**hostis** (gen. sing. *hostis*), *enemy*. "The enemy" when more than *one* enemy is meant is "hostes" (plural). The following verb, *will*, therefore, also be plural.**nāvis** (gen. sing. *navis*), *ship*.**prōra** (1st. decl.), *prow*.**cōpiae** (plural), *forces*.**numērus** (2nd decl.), *number*.**āger** (gen. sing. *agri*), *field*, *lawn*.**Vastat**, (*he*) *lays waste*.**vastant**, (*they*) *lay waste*.**terrentur**, *are frightened*.

## EXERCISES 55-58.

(Section 16.)

**Pāter**, *patris*, *father*.**māter**, *matris*, *mother*.**juvēnis**, *juvenis*, *young man*, *a youth*.**sēnēx**, *senis*, *old man*.**pars**, *partis*, *part*, *a part*, *some*.**ānimus**, *mind*, *heart*.**verbum**, *word*.**Regiūs**, a, um, *royal*.

## EXERCISES 59-62.

(Section 17.)

**Caput** (neut.), *capītis*, *head*, *capital*.**carmen** (neut.), *carmīnis*, *song*, *poem*.**nomen** (neut.), *nominis*, *name*.**tempus** (neut.), *tempōris*, *time*.**Antīquus**, a, um, *ancient*, *old*.**nōtus**, a, um, *known*.

## EXERCISES 63, 64.

(Section 18.)

**Ānimal** (neut.), *animālis*, *animal*.**calcar** (neut.), *calcāris*, *spur*.**conclāve** (neut.), *conclāvis*,*room*.**vectigāl** (neut.), *vectigālis*,*tax*.

**equus**, *horse*.

**Incitat**, (*he*) *urges on*.

**incitant**, (*they*) *urge on*.

**pendit**, (*he*) *pays*.

**pendunt**, (*they*) *pay*.

### EXERCISES 65-70.

(Section 19.)

**Corōna**, *crown*.

**flos**, *flōris*, *flower*.

**Noster**, *nostra*, *nostrum*,  
*our*.

**Lēgit**, (*he*) *reads*.

**legunt**, (*they*) *read*.

**Interdum**, *sometimes*.

### EXERCISES 71, 72.

(Section 20.)

**Cicēro**, *Cicerōnis*, a Roman  
orator and statesman.

**homo**, *hōmīnis*, *man*.<sup>1</sup>

**praedo**, *praedōnis*, *brigand*  
(and with *maritimus*, *pirate*).

**sermo**, *sermōnis*, *conversa-*  
*tion*.

**Facētus**, *a*, *um*, *witty*, *face-*  
*tious*.

1 “*Vir*” is also *a man*; but the difference between *homo* and *vir* is, that *homo* means a man, and not an animal; *vir*, a man and not a woman. *Vir* also is used in praise; “*a bad man*” is “*improbus homo*,” but “*a good man*” is “*bonus vir*.”

**maritimus**, *a*, *um*, *belonging to*  
*the sea*, *sea-*.

[**Corona**, *crown*.

**flos**, *floris*, *flower*.

**noster**, *ra*, *rum*, *our*.

**legit**, (*he*) *reads*.

**legunt**, (*they*) *read*.

**interdum**, *sometimes*.]

### EXERCISES 73, 74.

(Section 21.)

**color**, *colōris*, *colour*.

**viātor**, *viatōris*, *traveller*.

**variūs**, *a*, *um*, *various*, *varied*,  
*different*.

### EXERCISES 75, 76.

(Section 22.)

**Custos**, *custōdis*, *keeper*.

**mos**, *mōris*, *manner*, *custom*,  
*character*.

**more majorum**, *in the*  
*manner of his*, *their*, etc.,  
*ancestors*, *as his ancestors*  
*dil.*

### EXERCISES 77, 78.

(Section 23.)

**Agger**, *aggēris*, *rampart*.

**imber**, *imbris*, *shower*; *imbre*  
*magno*, *in a heavy shower*.

**castra** (2nd decl., plural),  
*camp*.

**Circumdat**, (*he*) *surrounds*.

## EXERCISES 79, 80.

(Section 24.)

**Eques**, ēquītis, *a horseman* ;  
**equites**, *cavalry*.  
**pes**, pēdis, *foot*.

**Claudus**, a, um, *lane*.  
**fessus**, a, um, *tired*.  
**Romānus**, a, um, *Roman*.  
**ducenti**, ae, a, *two hundred*.

## EXERCISES 85, 86.

(Section 26.)

**Orātio**, oratiōnis, *speech*,  
*oration*.  
**multitūdo**, multitūdinis,  
*multitude*, *a large number*.  
**imāgo**, imaginis, *image*, like-  
*ness*.  
**ordo**, ordinis (masc.), *order*,  
*row*, *rank*.

**Supērat**, (he) *overcomes*.  
**turbat**, (hs) *throws into con-  
fusion*.

**Scipio**, *Scipio*.

## EXERCISES 87, 88.

(Section 27.)

**Arbor**, arbōris (fem.), *tree*.  
**cor**, cordis (neut.), *heart*.  
**os**, ūris (neut.), *mouth*, *face*  
*(in ore, in the mouth, on the  
lips)*.  
**os**, ossis (neut.), *bone*.

**silva** (1st decl.), *a wood*.**Densus**, a, um, *thick*, *dense*.

## EXERCISES 89, 90.

(Section 28.)

**Iter**, itinēris (neut.), *journey*,  
*march*.  
**ver**, vēris (neut.), *spring* (the  
season).

**Prīmus**, a, um, *first*, *early*.

**Făcit**, (he) *makes*; **iter facit**,  
(ihe) *makes a journey*, (he)  
*marches*.  
**faciunt**, (they) *make*; **iter  
faciunt**, (they) *make a jour-  
ney*, (they) *march*.

## EXERCISES 91, 92.

(Section 29.)

**Quies**, quiētis (sem.), *quiet*,  
*rest*.  
**Sēges**, segētis (sem.), *crop*.  
**aes**, aeris (neut.), *brass*,  
*money*; **aes alienum**, *debt*.

**Aliēnus**, a, um, *belonging to  
other people*, *other people's*.  
**molestus**, a, um, *troublesome*,  
*annoying*.

**Incidit**, (he) *falls*.  
**incident**, (they) *fall*.

**In** (with accusative), *into*.

## EXERCISES 97, 98.

(Section 31.)

*Classis, classis, fleet, class.  
nāvis, navis, ship.  
vestis, vestis, dress, clothing,  
clothes.*

*Carthaginiensis, a Carthagi-  
nian, Carthaginian.*

## EXERCISES 99, 100.

(Section 32.)

*Auris, auris, ear.  
avis, avis, bird.*

*messis, messis, harvest.*

*Largus, a, um, abundant.  
Surdus, a, um, deaf.  
dexter, dextra, dextrum,  
right.  
sinister, sinistra, sinis-  
trum, left.*

*Cānit, (he) sings.  
canunt, (they) sing.*

## EXERCISES 101, 102.

(Section 33.)

*Aestas, aestatis, summer.  
civitas, civitatis, state.  
honestas, honestatis, hon-  
esty.  
laus, laudis, praise.*

*Summus, a, um, highest, ex-  
treme, consummate.  
summa aestas, the  
height of summer, mid-  
summer.*

## EXERCISES 103, 104.

(Section 34.)

*Lex, lēgis, law.  
nox, noctis, night.  
pax, pācis, peace.  
vox, vōcis, voice.*

*(Clarus, a, um, clear.)  
obscurus, a, um, dark.  
sevērus, a, um, strict, severe.*

## EXERCISES 105, 106.

(Section 35.)

*Gens, gentis, tribe, nation.  
mors, mortis, death.  
urbs, urbis, city.  
Graecia, Greece.*

*Honestus, a, um, honourable.  
Timet, (he) fears.*

## EXERCISES 107, 108.

(Section 36.)

*Caedes, caedis, slaughter.  
clādes, cladis, defeat.  
nūbes, nubis, cloud.*

*Galli, the Gauls.*

*Accipit, (he) receives.  
accipiunt, (they) receive.*

## EXERCISES 113, 114.

(Section 38.)

*Collis, collis (masc.), hill; in  
summo colle (on the hill*

where it is highest), *on the top of the hill.*

**finis, finis** (masc.), *end; fines, territory.*

**mensis, mensis** (masc.), *month.*

**Caesar, Caesāris, Cūsar;** a Great Roman general and statesman.

**Aestīvus, a, um,** (having to do with summer), *summer.*

**ardulus, a, um,** *steep.*

**Januārius, a, um;** *mensis Januarius, the month of January.*

#### EXERCISES 115, 116.

(Section 39.)

**Crīnis, crinis** (masc.), *hair* (the plural is generally used).

**ensis, ensis** (masc.), *sword*

**ignis, ignis** (masc.), *fire.*

**Acūtus, a, um,** *sharp.*

**Vulnērat, (he) wounds.**

**urit, (he) burns; uritur, is burned.**

**urunt, (they) burn.**

#### EXERCISES 117, 118.

(Section 40.)

**Amnis, amnis** (masc.), *river.*

**orbis, orbis** (masc.), *circle.<sup>1</sup>*

**pānis, panis** (masc.), *bread.*

**terra** (1st decl.), *land.<sup>1</sup>*

**Rāpidus, a, um,** *rapid.*  
**siccus, a, um,** *dry.*

<sup>1</sup> *Orbis terrarum* (the circle of the lands), *the world, universe;* *orbē faciunt* (in a battle), *fōrm circles* (as our soldiers form squares).

#### EXERCISES 119, 120.

(Section 41.)

**Lāpis, lapīdis** (masc.), *stone.*  
**sanguis, sanguinis** (masc.), *blood.*

**Humānus, a, um,** *human.*  
**ruber, rubra, rubrum,** *red.*

**Fundit, (he) sheds, pours; loses (blood).**

**fundunt, (they) shed, pour.**

**jācit, (he) throws.**

**jaciunt, (they) throw.**

#### EXERCISES 121, 122.

(Section 42.)

**Cīnis, cinēris** (masc.), *ash.<sup>2</sup>*

**pulvis, pulvēris** (masc.), *dust.*

**Cārus, a, um,** *dear.*

**madidus, a, um,** *wet.*

**mortuus, a, um,** *dead.*

**Fōvet, (he) cherishes.**

<sup>2</sup> *Cineres, ashes.* The Romans used often to burn their dead, and then they kept the ashes.

## EXERCISES 125, 126.

(Section 44.)

**Călix, calicis** (masc.), *cup.*  
**conjux, conjugis**, *wife.*  
**dux, ducis**, *leader.*  
**grex, grēgis** (masc.), *flock.*  
**judex, judicis**, *judge.*

**Aureus, a, um**, *golden.*  
**medius, a, um**, *middle;*  
*media nocte, in the middle*  
*of the night, at midnight;*  
*media hieme, in mid-win-*  
*ter, etc.*

---

## EXERCISES 127, 128.

(Section 45.)

**Dens, dentis** (masc.), *tooth.*  
**fons, fontis** (masc.), *fountain,*  
*spring.*  
**mons, montis** (masc.), *mount-*  
*ain.*  
**pons, pontis** (masc.), *bridge.*  
**Aqua** (1st decl.), *water.*  
**(Superat, (he) ascends.)**  
**Transit, (he) crosses.**  
**transēunt, (they) cross.**

---

## EXERCISES 133, 134.

(Section 47.)

**Fulgur, fulgūris**, *lightning,*  
*flash of lightning.*  
**corpus, corpōris**, *body.*  
**frigus, frigōris**, *cold.*  
**lītūs, lītōris**, *shore, coast.*

**pecus, pecōris**, *herd.*  
**rus, rūris**, *country* (as opposed  
 to town); **rura**, *country.*  
**Crēber, crebra, crebrum**,  
*frequent.*

---

## EXERCISES 135, 136.

(Section 48.)

**Gēnus, genēris**, *kind; genus*  
*humanum, the human race.*  
**lātus, latēris**, *side, flank.*  
**ōnus, onēris**, *burden.*  
**ōpus, opēris**, *work.*  
**pondus, pondēris**, *weight.*  
**vulnus, vulnēris**, *wound.*

**Portat, (he) carries, is carrying**

## EXERCISES 137, 138.

(Section 49.)

**Flumen, flumēnis**, *stream.*  
**lac, lactis**, *milk.*  
**mare, maris**, *sea.*  
**poēma, poēmātis**, *poem.*  
**Albus, a, um**, *white.*  
**Incōlit, (he) inhabits.**

---

## EXERCISES 139, 140.

(Section 50.)

**Fur, fūris**, *thief.*  
**palus, palūdis** (fem.), *marsh.*  
**pecus, pecūdis** (fem.), *flock.*  
**Imprōbus, a, um**, *wicked.*  
**tēner, tenēra, tenerum**,  
*tender.*

## EXERCISES 141, 142.

(Section 51.)

**Juventus**, *juventūtis* (fem.), *youth* (*i.e.* the time of youth); **juvenus Romana**, *the young men of Rome*; **juvenus nostra**, *the young men of our times*.<sup>1</sup>

**senectus**, *senectūtis* (fem.), *old age*.

**virtus**, *virtūtis* (fem.), *virtue, courage*.

**Egrēgius**, *a, um*, *remarkable, extraordinary*.

(*magnus*, (with **vox**), *loud*.)

**Contemnit**, (*he*) *despises*.

**vocat**, (*he*) *calls*.

1 “Juvenis” is *a young man, a youth*; “juvenes,” *young men, the youths*. But “Juventus” (the time of youth) may also be used for “the young men”—all taken together. We too can say in English, “the youth of England,” meaning, “all the young men of England.”

## EXERCISES 143, 144.

(Section 52.)

**Consul**, *consūlis*, *consul* (a Roman magistrate).

**sol**, *sōlis* (masc.), *sun*.

**vita**, (1st decl.), *life*.

**Rusticus**, *a, um* (*having to do with the country*), *country, of the country*.

**Urbānus**, *a, um* (*having to do with the town*), *town, of the town*.

**Siccat**, (*he*) *dries, drains*.

## EXERCISES 149, 150.

(Section 54.)

Where the gender is not given the nouns follow the rules.

**Carcer**, *carcēris*, *prison*.

**foedus**, *foedēris*, *treaty*.

**hiems**, *hiēmis*, *winter*.

**lux**, *lūcis*, *light, dawn*.

**Firmus**, *a, um*, *firm, lasting*.

**gelidus**, *a, um*, *cold*.

## EXERCISES 151, 152.

(Section 55.)

**Agmen**, *agmīnis*, *column (of an army)*.

**labor**, *labōris*, *labour, toil*.

**murmur**, *murmūris*, *murmur, rustling, rumbling*.

**plebs**, *plēbis*, *the commons*;<sup>1</sup>

**plebs Romana**, *the commons of Rome*.

**consilium**, *plan, resolve*.

**Carpit**, (*he*) *gathers, plucks, harasses*.

**Cum**, (with the ablative), *with, (along with)*. The word is not to be used in the English into Latin exercises unless added in brackets.

1 “Commons,” as we speak of the House of Commons.

## EXERCISES 153, 154.

(Section 56.)

**Frons,** frōndis, *leaf.*  
**regio,** regiōnis, *district, region.*  
**rupes,** rupis, *rock.*  
**vallis,** vallis, *valley.*

**autumnus,** autumn.**Finītīmus,** a, um, *neighbouring.***Dextrā,** *on the right hand.***sinistrā,** *on the left hand.*

**que,** and. ("Boys and girls" may be either "pueri puellaeque," or "pueri et puellae.")

## EXERCISES 155, 156.

(Section 57.)

**Brēvis,** e, *short.***fortis,** e, *brave.***grāvis,** e, *heavy, weighty, dignified, severe.***omnis,** e, *all, every.***Celerītas,** celeritātis, *speed.*(superat, (he) *surpasses.*)

—

## EXERCISES 157, 158.

(Section 58.)

**Audax,** *daring.*

**ingens** (declined like 'sapiens,' but abl. sing. only ingenti), *huge, enormous.*

**sapiens,** *wise.***fācīlis,** e, *easy.***difficīlis,** e, *difficult.***Nihil** (not declined, neut.), *nothing.*

## EXERCISES 159, 160.

(Section 59.)

**Acer,** keen, *spirited, piercing.*  
**cēler,** *quick.***December** (declined like **acer**), *December.***pedester** (declined like **acer**), *having to do with foot soldiers, infantry; copiae pedestres, infantry; pugna pedestris, an infantry battle.***Pugna,** ae, *battle.***Cāpit,** (he) *takes, captures;*  
**consilium capit,** (he) *forms a plan, resolve.***capiunt,** (they) *take.***vēnit,** (he) *comes.***veniunt,** (they) *come.*

## EXERCISES 161, 162.

(Section 60.)

**Exercītus,** *army.***fluctus,** ūs, *wave.***impētus,** ūs, *charge, rush.***versus,** ūs, *verse.***ventus,** (2nd decl.), *wind***Agit,** (he) *drives.*

## EXERCISES 163, 164.

(Section 61.)

**Cornu**, *horn, wing (of an army).*  
**mānus**, *ūs (fem.), hand.*  
**portus**, *ūs, harbour.*  
**quercus**, *ūs (fem.), oak; in summa quercu, on the top of the oak.*

**Collōcat**, *(he) places.*  
**conficit**, *(he) finishes.*  
**conficiunt**, *(they) finish.*

## EXERCISES 165, 166.

(Section 62.)

**Aedificat**, *(he) builds.*  
**mānet**, *(he) remains.*  
**exit**, *(he) goes out.*  
**exēunt**, *(they) go out.*  
**rēdit**, *(he) goes back, returns.*  
**redeunt**, *(they) go back, return.*  
**Fōris** (adverb), *out of doors.*

## EXERCISES 167, 168.

(Section 63.)

**Res**, *thing, affair, matter.*  
**respublica**, *the commonwealth* ('respublica' is two words put together, 'res' and 'publicus'; the adjective 'publicus' has to agree in case and gender with 'res').  
**causa**, (1st decl.), *cause;*  
*causā* (abl.), *for the sake of;*  
*meā causā*, *for my sake.*  
**Adversus**, *a, uim, adverse,*

*contrary; res adversae (nomin. plur.), adversity.*  
**secundus**, *a, um, favourable;*  
*res secundae, prosperity.*  
**publicus**, *a, um, public.*  
**utilis**, *e, useful.*  
**(summus, utmost.)**

## EXERCISES 169, 170.

(Section 64.)

**Die ac nccte**, *by day and night, all day and night.*  
**Spes**, *spei, hope.*  
**victōria** (1st decl.), *victory.*  
**Pauci**, *ae, a, few.*  
**postērus**, *a, um, following.*  
**Oppugnat**, *(he) besieges.*

## EXERCISES 181-184.

(Section 66.)

**Adventus**, *ūs, arrival.*  
**filia**, *ae, daughter.*  
**filius** (2nd decl.), *son.*  
**Graecus**, *i, a Greek.*  
**ōculus**, *i, eye.*  
**Certus**, *a, um, certain;* **Cæsarem certiōrem facit** (he makes Caesar more certain), *he informs Caesar;* **milites certiores facit**, *he informs the soldiers.*  
**incertus**, *a, um, uncertain.*  
**Quid** (neut.), *what?*  
**quam**, *than.*  
**Dē**, (with abl.), *about, of (concerning).*

## EXERCISES 185-188.

(Section 67.)

**Sapientia, ae, wisdom.**  
**Solon, Solōnis, Solon;** a Greek lawgiver and wise man.

**Vērus, a, um, true.**  
**dulcis, e, sweet, delightful.**  
**tristis, e, sad, gloomy.**  
**Mi, vocative of meus.**

---

## EXERCISES 189-192.

(Section 68.)

**Similis, e, like.**  
**dissimilis, e, unlike.**  
**pauper** (gen. **paupēris**),  
*poor.*  
**salüber, bris, bre,** (comp.  
*salubrior*), *healthy.*  
**Longe, (by) far.**  
**multo, (by) much.**

---

## EXERCISES 195, 196.

(Section 70.)

**Annus, i, year.**  
**nātu, by birth.**  
**major natu, elder, older.**  
**minor natu, younger.**  
**maximus natu, eldest.**  
**minimus natu, youngest.**

**veri similis, like the truth,**  
*probable;* (*veri* is gen. of  
*verus*).

## EXERCISES 199, 200.

(Section 72.)

**unum annum nātus,** (having been born one year), *one year old.*

**Longius, (adverb), further.**

**Abest, is off, is distant.**  
**absunt, are off, are distant.**

**A, ab (with abl.), from.**

---

## EXERCISES 201, 202

(Section 73.)

**Hōra, ae, hour.**  
**legio, legiōnis, a legion** (a division of the Roman army, containing 3000, or more, men).

**Bellum Gallicum, the Gallic War** (a work of *Caesari's*).

**Ad** (with acc.), *to* (of motion to, going to).

---

## EXERCISES 203, 204.

(Section 74.)

**Regnum, reign.**

**Jam, already.**  
**longissimē, (adverb), very far,**

## EXERCISES 209, 210.

(Section 76.)

**Ego** (nom. sing.), *I*.**tu** (nom. sing.) *you* (of one person).**nōs** (nom. plur.), *we*.**vōs** (nom. plur.), *you* (of more than one person).**Vētus, vetēris** (superlative, *veterīmus*), *old* (of long standing).**Dic̄itur**, (*he*) *is said*.**dic̄untur**, (*they*) *are said*.

## EXERCISES 211, 212.

(Section 77.)

**Cras**, *to-morrow*.**hēri**, *yesterday*.**quando**, *when?***ubi**, *where?*

## EXERCISES 213-216.

(Section 78.)

**Fōras**, *out of doors* (when *going out of doors* is spoken of; **foris** when *being out of doors* is spoken of).**māne**, *in the morning*.**nunc**, *now*.**rūre**, *in the country*.**vespēre**, *in the evening*.

## EXERCISE 217-220.

(Section 79.)

**Mēmor, memōris**, *mindful*.  
**immēmor**, *unmindful, forgetful*.**Ad-sum**, *I am present*; with dat. (*I am present to a person*, *I am at his side*); *I help, assist*.**Saepissime**, *very often*.**Sed**, *but*.

## EXERCISES 221-224.

(Section 80.)

**Dives**, *divitīs*, *rich* (comparative, *diritior* or *ditior*; superlative, *divitissimus* or *ditissimus*).**Divitiae**, *riches, wealth*.

## EXERCISES 225-228.

(Section 81.)

**Legātus**, *i*, *ambassador*.**Suus**, *a, um, his, her, its, or their own*; **sui**, *his (own) men*.**Mittit**, (*he*) *sends*.

## EXERCISES 229, 230.

(Section 82.)

**Neque—neque**, *neither—nor*.

## EXERCISES 231-234.

(Section 83.)

**Nullus**, *no.***sōlus**, *alone, only.***tōtus**, *whole.***non solum**—**sed etiam**, *not only—but also* (*solum*, adverb).**Dūcit**, (*he*) *leads.*

## EXERCISES 235-238.

(Section 84.)

**Auxīlum**, *help, assistance.**auxilia*, *auxiliary troops.***Alter**, *second; one's neighbour.***Edūcit**, (*he*) *leads out.***pētit**, (*he*) *asks for; auxilium petit*, (*he*) *asks for help.***E, ex**, *out of, from.*

## EXERCISES 239-242.

(Section 85.)

**Eruptio**, *eruptiōnis*, *a sally.***Beātus**, *a, um, happy.***Redūcit** (*he*) *leads back.*

## EXERCISES 243, 244.

(Section 86.)

**Exspectare**, *to await.***liberare**, *to set free.*

## EXERCISES 245, 246.

(Section 87.)

**Quis**, *who?***Fugare**, *to put to flight.***fundit**, 1. (*he*) *pours; 2. (he) routs.***Aliquando**, *one day, some time or other.*

## EXERCISES 247, 248.

(Section 88.)

**Nēmo**, *nobody.***obses**, *obsidēs*, *a hostage.***Occūpare**, *to seize.*

## EXERCISES 249, 250.

(Section 89.)

**Pericūlum**, *danger.***Pugnare**, *to fight.***regnare**, *to reign.***vitare**, *to avoid.***Fortiēr** (*uv.*), *bravely.*

## EXERCISES 253, 254.

(Section 91.)

**(Pulcher**, *glorious.*)**Jubet**, (*he*) *orders.***potest**, (*he*) *is able.***possunt**, (*they*) *are able.*

## EXERCISES 255-258.

(Section 92.)

**Memōria**, ae, *the memory*;  
**memoriā teneo**, *I hold in  
the memory, I remember.*

**Labōro**, -are, *I work.*  
**moneo**, ēre, *I advise, I warn.*  
**tēneo**, -ēre, *I hold.*

## EXERCISES 259-262.

(Section 93.)

**Dēbeo**, -ēre, *I owe, I ought.*  
**exerceo**, -ēre, (*I*) *exercise*;  
**corpus exerceo**, *I exercise  
the body, I take (bodily) ex-  
ercise.*

**tāceo**, -ēre, *I am silent.*  
**vāleo**, -ēre, *I am well.*

**Optime**, (adverb), *very well;*  
**optime valeo**, *I am in very  
good health, I am very well.*

## EXERCISES 263, 264.

(Section 94.)

**Turpis**, e, *disgraceful.*

**valē**, **valēte** (imper. of  
vāleo), *farewell! good-bye!*

**Diu** (adverb), *long, for a long  
time.*

**ītērum** (adverb), *again; iter-  
um atque iterum, again  
and again.*

## EXERCISES 265-268.

(Section 95.)

**Tēlum**, a *dart.*

**Superior**, superiōris, 1.  
*higher; 2. former, previous*  
*(superlative, summus).*

**(Ago**, -ēre, *I do; I pass, spend;  
I drive.)*

**solvō**, -ēre, *I loose; navem*  
**solvō** (*I loose the ship from  
its moorings, I set sail.*)

**cāpio terram**, *I reach the  
land, I make the land, (inf.  
capēre).*

## EXERCISES 269-272.

(Section 96.)

**Lōcus**, i, *place.*

**Conjungō**, -ēre, **conjunxi**,  
*I join, unite.*

**dico**, -ēre, **dixi**, *I say.*

**interficio**, **interficēre**, *I kill.*

**vivo**, -ēre, **vixi**, *I live.*

The perfects of some verbs not  
formed like *reyo* :—

**Capiō**, cēpi.

**accipio**, accēpi.

**carpo**, carpsi.

**facio**, fēci.

**conficio**, confēci.

**interficio**, interfēci.

**jacio**, jēci.

**lego**, lēgi.

## EXERCISES 273, 274.

(Section 97.)

**Vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your* (referring to more than one person; *tuis* refers to one person only).

**Diutius** (comparative of *diu*), *longer, any longer*; **diutissime**, *for very long, for a very long time.*

---

## EXERCISES 275, 276.

(Section 98.)

**Cupio, I wish, desire** (inf. *cupere*).

**munio, -ire, I fortify.**

**scio, -ire, I know.**

**nescio, -ire, I do not know.**

---

## EXERCISES 277, 278.

(Section 99.)

**Dormio, -ire, I sleep.**

---

## EXERCISES 279-282.

(Section 100.)

**Convénire, to come together, assemble.**

**Statim** (adverb), *at once.*  
**celeriter** (adverb), *quickly.*

## EXERCISES 283-286.

(Section 101.)

**Captivus, a captive, prisoner**  
**incipio, I begin**  
**inceptum, an undertaking.**

---

## EXERCISES 287-290.

(Section 102.)

**Jus, juris, right.**

**justus, -a, -um, just.**

**justitia, justice.**

**injuria, wrong, injury.**

**judicare, to judge.**

**judicium, judgment.**

---

## EXERCISES 291, 292.

(Section 103.)

**Audax, audācis, bold.**  
**audācia, daring, boldness.**  
**audacter, boldly.**

---

## EXERCISES 293, 294.

(Section 104.)

**Sedeo, I sit.**

**obsideo, I besiege.**

**possideo, I possess.**

---

## EXERCISES 295-298.

(Section 105.)

**Pono, -ēre, I put.**

**antepono**, -ēre, *I prefer.*  
**impono**, -ēre, *I put on.*

---

**EXERCISES 299, 300.**

(Section 106.)

**Instrūo**, -ēre, *I draw up.***Nuntius**, -i, *a message, a messenger.***Pro** (preposition with ablative),  
*before, in front of, instead of.***EXERCISES 301, 302.**  
(Section 107.)**Erudio**, *I educate, instruct.*  
**Punio**, *I punish.***EXERCISES 303-306.**

(Section 108.)

**Colligo**, -ēre, *I collect.*  
**elēgo**, -ēre, *I pick out, choose,  
select.*  
**intellēgo**, -ēre, *I understand.*

## VOCABULARIES TO THE FIRST FOUR PIECES OF TRANSLATION.

### I.—A LETTER, p. 24.

[*The words are given in the order in which they come in English.*]

fuit, was.  
jucundus, pleasant.  
mihi, to me.  
nam, for.  
scribit, he writes.  
filius, son.  
industrius, industrious.  
mater, mother.  
mittit, sends.  
tibi, to you.  
praemium, as a ----

soror, sister.  
sex, six.  
annus, year.  
rogat, she asks.  
me, me.  
quando, when.  
pater, father.  
frater, brother.  
revertet, will return.  
vale, farewell, good-bye.

### II.—ROMULUS AND REMUS, p. 24.

[*The words are given in the order in which they come in English.*]

dum, while.  
aedificat, is building.  
murus, wall.  
Roma, Rome.  
improbis, wicked.  
transsilit, jumps over.  
adhuc, as yet.  
parvus, small.  
compellat, addresses.  
contumeliosus, insolent.  
verbum, word.  
carissimus, dearest.

quam, how.  
magnificus, magnificent  
arcent, they keep off.  
inimicus, enemy.  
egregie, splendidly.  
autem, but.  
ira, anger.  
occidit, kills.  
tum, then.  
conficit, he finishes  
feliciter, happily

## III.—THE BLACK SLAVE, p. 24.

[The words are given as they come in the Latin.]

Agrippa, *Agrippa*.  
 niger, *black*.  
 servum, *slave*.  
 habebat, *had*.  
 platea, *street*.  
 rident, *laugh at*.  
 en! *see!*  
 clamant, *they shout*.  
 quare! *how!*  
 nemio, *nobody*.  
 te, *you*.  
 lavat, *wash*.  
 tamen, *however*.

validus, *strong*.  
 audit, *hours*.  
 capillus, *hair*.  
 arripit, *he seizes*.  
 frustra, *in vain*.  
 lacrima, *a tear*.  
 fundunt, *they shed*.  
 eunetus, *all*.  
 sine, *without*.  
 mora, *delay*.  
 in, *into*.  
 atramentum, *ink*.  
 demergit, *dips*.

## IV.—A FABLE, p. 40.

[The words are given in alphabetical order.]

animal, *animal*.  
 arr̄gat, *claims (unjustly)*.  
 capiunt, *they take*.  
 capra, *a goat*.  
 comportant, *they bring it together*.  
 denique, *lastly*.  
 dividunt, *they divide*.  
 equus, *a horse*.  
 erit, *he will be*.  
 fames, *hunger*.  
 imbecillus, *weak*.  
 inquit, *he says*.  
 jungunt, *form*.  
 labor, *labour*.  
 leo, *a lion*.  
 locus, *place*.  
 major, *greater*.  
 ovis, *a sheep*.

partem (acc. sing. of pars), *part*.  
 partes (acc. plur. of pars), *parts*.  
 praeda, *booty*.  
 primus, *first*.  
 propter, *on account of*.  
 quam, *than*.  
 quartus, *fourth*.  
 quattuor, *four*.  
 quoniam, *since*.  
 secundus, *second*.  
 sibi, *for himself*.  
 si quis, *if anybody*.  
 societas, *a company*.  
 tertius, *third*.  
 unus, *one*.  
 vindico, *I claim (justly)*.  
 vobis, *to you*.

# LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

TO THE

## EXERCISES AND TRANSLATION.

*Obs. 1. Words that occur in the Exercises are printed in thicker type. (Many of these occur also in the Translation.)*

*Obs. 2. A figure after a word denotes the declension or conjugation to which it belongs.*

### A

**a, ab, by** or *from* (with abl.); it is not used for *by* before things; see p. 28.

**abdit,** (*he*) *hides.*

**abest, is absent;** **absunt, are absent;** from **absum.**

**accēdo** (3), *I approach.*

**accurrunt,** (*they*) *run up.*

**acer,** acris, acre (gen. acris, abl. acri), *fierce, keen, spirited.*

**acerrimus,** *the bitterest.*

**acies,** *battle, line of battle.*

**aci**, abl. sing. of acer (above).

**acris** (see acer).

**acriter** (adverb), *keenly, fiercely.*

**acuo** (perf. acui), *I sharpen.*

**acutus,** *sharp.*

**ad** (with acc.), *to, towards, for, against.* It translates *to* only when "motion to" is meant, e.g. *to the city, ad urbem.* But before names of towns the accusative without *ad* is used, e.g. *to Rome, Romam.*

**adducuntur,** (*they*) *are led.*

### A

**adduxit** (perf. of addūeo), (*he*) *led up, tempted.*

**adest,** *is here, is upon us.*

**adeunt,** (*they*) *are coming, approach.*

**adfectus,** a, um, *moved, touched.*

**adferre,** *to bring.*

**adflātu** (abl. sing. of adflatus), *breath.*

**ad īūm** (colle), *to the bottom (of the hill).*

**adjūtor,** *helper;* *Deo adjutore, God being my helper.*

**admōvent,** (*they*) *move up.*

**adnuit,** (*he*) *nods to, beckons.*

**adstat,** (*he*) *stands by.*

**adsto** (1), *I stand by.*

**adsum,** *I am present; with dat., I help.*

**adulseens,** *a youth.*

**advēniunt,** (*they*) *are coming up, come up.*

**adventus** (4), *arrival.*

**adverso colle,** *up-hill.*

**adversus,** *adverse; res adversae, adversity, trouble.*

## A

adversus (preposition with acc.), *against.*  
**aedificat**, (*he*) *builds*; **aedificant**, (*they*) *build.*  
 aedificavit, (*he*) *built.*  
 aedificium, *a building.*  
 Aegyptius, *Egyptian.*  
**aes** (gen. aeris, neut.) *alienum, debt* (literally, *other people's money*).  
 aestas (gen. aestatis), *summer.*  
 aestivus, *belonging to summer.*  
 ager (gen. agri), *field, land.*  
 agger (gen. aggēris), *rampart, mound.*  
**agit**, (*he*) *is doing, does;* *igitam ago, I spend (my) life.*  
 agitatus, *tossed.*  
 agmen (gen. agminis), *army.*  
 ais, *you say.*  
 albus, *white.*  
 Alexander (gen. Alexandri), *Alexander.*  
 alienus, *belonging to others.*  
 alii, *others.*  
 alioquin, *otherwise.*  
 aliquando, *some day, once upon a time.*  
 aliquot, *some few.*  
**alius**, a, um, *other* (see p. 183); **alii** — **alii**, *some—others.*  
 alligat, (*he*) *ties, binds.*  
 alligatus, *bound.*  
 alter (see p. 187), *the other (of two), another, a second.*  
 altérum (neut. nom. sing. of alter).  
 altus, *high.*  
 alvus (2), *belly.*  
 amans (acc. sing. amantem), *loving.*  
 amat, (*he*) *loves; amant, (they) love; amatur, (he) is loved; amantur, (they) are loved.*  
 amicus (2), *friend.*  
 amitto (3), *I lose.*  
 amittunt, (*they*) *lose.*

## A

annis (3, masc. gen. annis), *stream.*  
 amor (gen. amoris), *love.*  
 amoēvo (2), *I move away.*  
 an, or.  
 ancilla, *maid, servant-girl.*  
**animal** (gen. animalis, neut.), *animal.*  
**animus** (2), *mind, heart.*  
**annus** (2), *year.*  
 ante (adverb), *before;* (or preposition with acc.,) *before:* *ante Christum natum, before the birth of Christ* (our n.c. in dates).  
 antea (adverb), *before.*  
**antepono** (3), *I prefer.*  
 antiqui, *the ancients.*  
**antiquus**, *ancient, old.*  
 aperio, *I impart, disclose.*  
 aperit, (*he*) *imparts.*  
 apparet, (*he*) *appears.*  
 appello (3), *I put in (a ship to shore).*  
 apud (with acc.), *by, near;* *apud plebem, before the people.*  
 aqua, *water.*  
 arbor (gen. arbōris), *a tree.*  
 arbustum, *a shrub.*  
 arcus (gen. arcūs), *bow.*  
 arduus, *steep.*  
 area, *court, courtyard.*  
 argentum, *silver.*  
 aries (gen. arietis), *a ram.*  
**arma** (plur.), *arms (of a soldier).*  
 armatus, a, um, *armed.*  
 arripit, (*he*) *snatches up, seizes.*  
 aripiunt, (*they*) *snatch up.*  
 ars (gen. artis), *art.*  
 assiduus, *assiduous, continual.*  
 at, *but.*  
 Athēnis, *at Athens.*  
 atque, *and.*  
 Atticus (adjective), *belonging to Attica, of Attica.*  
 attingere, *to reach.*  
 attōnitus, a, um, *astonished.*

## A

**audācia**, *daring*.  
**audacter**, *boldly*.  
**audax** (gen. audācis, see p. 112),  
*daring*.  
**audeo**, *I dare*.  
**audit**, (*he*) *hears*.  
**audīunt**, (*they*) *hear*.  
**aureus**, *golden*.  
**auris** (gen. auris), *ear*.  
**aurum**, *gold*.  
**aut**, *or*; **aut—aut**, *either—or*.  
**autem**, *however*.  
**autumnus** (2), *autumn*.  
**auxilium**, *help*.  
**Aventinus**, *a*, *um*, Mons Aven-  
tinus, *The Aventine Hill*,  
(*one of the seven hills of*  
*Rome*).  
**avis** (gen. avis), *bird*.

## B

**bacūlum**, *a stuff*.  
**Bagrālas** (acc. Bagradam), *a river*  
*in Northern Africa*.  
**ballista**, *engine* (*of war*, a huge  
*bow for throwing stones in*  
*sieges*).  
**barba**, *beard*.  
**barbārus**, *a barbarian*.  
**beatus**, *happy*.  
**bellum**, *war*; bellum Gallicum,  
*the Gaullic War*.  
**benigne**, *kindly*.  
**bibo** (3), *I drink*; perf. *bibi*,  
*imperative bibe*.  
**bōnus**, *good*; **mēlior**, *better*; **op-**  
**timus**, *best*.  
**brēvis**,  *breve* (abl. brevi), *short*.  
**Britannicus**, *British*.

## C

**caedes** (gen. caedis), *slaughter*.  
**caelum**, *sky*.  
**cāeruleus**, *blue*.

## C

**calcar** (gen. calcāris, neut.), *spur*.  
**Caledōnia**, *Caledoniu*, now Scotland.  
**cālix** (gen. calicis, neut.), *a cup*.  
**callide**, *cleverly*.  
**callidus**, *clever*.  
**calo** (gen. calonis), *a camp-fol-*  
*lower*.  
**camēlus**, *a camel*.  
**campus**, *a plain*.  
**candens** (gen. cādēntis), *burning*.  
**canis**, *a dog*.  
**cānit**, (*he*) *sings*; **canunt**, (*they*)  
*sing*.  
**Cantium**, *Kent*.  
**capax** (gen. capātis), *capacious*.  
**capere**, *to take*.  
**capere terram**, *to make the land*.  
**capillus** (2), *hair*.  
**cāpio**, *I take*, *form*, *adopt*; *insu-*  
*lam capiunt*, *they make* (i.e.  
*arrive at*) *the island*.  
**captivus**, *a captive*, *prisoner*.  
**captus**, *having been taken*, *cap-*  
*tured*.  
**caput** (gen. capit̄is, neut.), *head*,  
*capital*.  
**carcer** (gen. carcēris), *prison*.  
**carmen** (gen. carminis, neut.),  
*song*.  
**caro** (gen. carnis), *flesh*.  
**carpit**, (*he*) *harasses*, *gathers*; *car-*  
*punt*, (*they*) *harass*, *gather*.  
**Carthaginiensis**, *Carthaginian*.  
**carus**, *dear*.  
**casēus**, *cheese*.  
**castellum**, *a fort*, *castle*.  
**castra** (2, plur.), *a camp*.  
**catapulta**, *a catapult* (*on a large*  
*scale*): *used by the Romans in*  
*sieges*.  
**catēna**, *a fetter*.  
**cauda**, *tail*.  
**causa** (1), *cause*; *mea causa*, *for*  
*my sake*.  
**celer**, *celeris*, *celere* (see p. 115),  
*quick*.

## C

**celeritas**, *celeritatis*, *speed*.  
**celeriter**, *quickly*.  
**cena**, *dinner*.  
**ceno** (1), *I dine*.  
**centum** (indeclinable), *hundred*.  
**certamen**, *a struggle, combat*.  
**certo** (adverb), *certainly, assuredly*.  
**certus**, *certus*, *sure*; *certiorem (-es)* *facit*, (*he*) *informs*.  
**ceteri**, *the rest*.  
**cibus**, *food*.  
**Cicero** (gen. *Ciceronis*), *Cicero*, a Roman orator and statesman.  
**cingunt**, (*they*) *surround*.  
**cinxis** (gen. *cineris*, masc.), *ash, cinder*.  
**circa** (with acc.), *around*.  
**circiter**, *about*.  
**circundat**, (*he*) *surrounds*; *circundant*, (*they*) *surround*; *circundatur*, *is surrounded*.  
**circumstat**, *stands around*.  
**civis** (gen. *civis*), *citizen*.  
**civitas** (gen. *civitatis*), *state*.  
**clades** (gen. *cladis*), *defeat*.  
**clam**, *secretly*.  
**clamans** (gen. *clamantis*), *shouting out, calling out*.  
**clamantes**, nom. or acc. plur. of *clamans*.  
**clamo** (1), *I shout*.  
**clamor** (gen. *clamoris*), *shout, shouting*.  
**clarus**, *clear, celebrated*.  
**classis** (gen. *classis*), *fleet*.  
**cludo** (3), *I shut*.  
**claudus**, *tame*.  
**clipens**, *shield*.  
**cognosco**, *I recognise, know*.  
**colligo** (3), *I collect*.  
**collis** (gen. *collis*, masc.), *hill*.  
**collocat**, (*he*) *places, stations, posts*.  
**collocatus**, *placed*.  
**colloco** (1), *I place*.  
**color** (gen. *coloris*), *colour*.

## C

**comae** (plur.), *hair*.  
**comes** (gen. *comitis*), *companion*.  
**committitur**, *is begun*.  
**commotus**, *moved*.  
**comprärat**, (*he*) *prepares, gets together*.  
**compes** (gen. *compedis*), *shuttle, shackle (for the feet)*.  
**comprehendunt**, (*they*) *see*.  
**conclave** (gen. *conclavis*, neut.), *a room*.  
**confectus**, a, um, *worn*.  
**confestim** (adverb), *hurriedly*.  
**conficit**, (*he*) *finishes; conficiunt, (they) finish*.  
**configo** (3), *I fight*.  
**confidunt**, (*they*) *stab*.  
**conjiciunt**, (*they*) *throw (with force)*.  
**conjungo** (3), *I join, unite*.  
**conjurant**, (*they*) *conspire*.  
**conjuro** (1), *I conspire*.  
**conjux** (gen. *conjugis*), *wife*.  
**conscendo** (3), *I climb; with navem, I embark*.  
**consilium**, *meeting, plan*.  
**conspicit**, (*he*) *sees, observes*.  
**conspicuit**, (*they*) *see, observe*.  
**constitui** (perf. of *constituo*).  
**constituo** (3), *I determine*.  
**consul** (gen. *consulis*), *consul (a Roman magistrate)*.  
**contemno** (3), *I despise*.  
**contendit**, *he went off*.  
**contentus**, *content, satisfied*.  
**conterritus**, a, um, *very frightened*.  
**continentes**, *continuous*.  
**contra** (adverb), *on the other hand*.  
**contumeliosus**, *insulting*.  
**conturbatis nostris**, *our men having been thrown into confusion*.  
**convénire**, *to assemble*.  
**conviva**, *guest*.  
**convivium**, *an entertainment*.  
**convoco** (1), *I call together*.  
**convertit**, (*he*) *turns*.

## C

convertuntur, *are turned*.  
 cōpia, *a supply*.  
**copiae**, *forces*.  
**cor** (gen. cordis, neut.), *heart*.  
 coriūm, *skin*.  
**cornu** (abl. cornu), *horn, wing* (of an army).  
**corōna** (1), *chaplet, wreath, crown*.  
**corpus** (gen. corpóris), *body*.  
 corripit, (*he*) *seizes*.  
 corticeus, *cork, made of cork*.  
**cotidie**, *every day*.  
**cras** (adverb), *to-morrow*.  
 cratēs (gen. cratis), *a hurdle*.  
**creber**, *crebra, cerebrum, frequent*.  
 credo (perf. credīdi, with dative),  
*I believe, I fancy*.  
**Crēta**, *Crete*.  
**crinis** (gen. crinis), *hair*.  
 cruciatur, *he is tortured*.  
 crudēlis,  *cruel*; crudelis in,  *cruel to*.  
 crudelitas, crudelitatis, *cruelty*.  
 crūs (gen. crūris, neut.), *leg*.  
**culpat**, (*he*) *blames*; **culpant**, (*they*) *blame*.  
 culter (gen. cultri), *knife*.  
**cum** (with abl.), *along with*.  
**cupio** (perf. cupivi), *I wish, desire*.  
**cur**, *why*.  
 cura, *care*; curae esse, *to be (for) a care*.  
 currit, (*he*) *runs*.  
 cursus (gen. cursūs), *course*.  
**custos** (gen. custōdis), *guardian, keeper*.  
 Cyclops (gen. Cyclōpis), *one of the Cyclopes (giants)*.

## D

**dat**, (*he*) *gives*; **dant**, (*they*) *give*; **datur**, *is given*; **dantur**, *are given*.  
 dātūr, *is being given*.  
 Davus, *Davus (name of a slave)*.

## D

**de** (with certiorem facit, *of*), *from, about*.  
**debeo**, *I ought, owe*.  
**December**, bris, bre, *December* (adj. agreeing with mensis).  
 decidit, (*he*) *falls down; decidunt, (they) fall down, fall off*.  
 dēdi, *perfect of dare, I gave*.  
 dēditus, a, um, *given up, devoted (from dedo)*.  
 deflexit, (*he*) *turned aside*.  
 deinde (two syllables), *then, next*.  
 deject, (*he*) *throws down, casts*.  
**delectat**, (*he*) *delights, pleases, charms*; **delectant**, (*they*) *delight*; **delectatur**, *is delighted*; **delectantur**, *are delighted*.  
 delibero (1), *I deliberate, consider*.  
 deligit, (*he*) *chooses out*.  
 delphines (acc. plur.), *dolphins*.  
 dēnum, *at length*.  
 dēnique, *lastly*.  
**dens** (gen. dentis), *tooth*.  
**densus**, *thick*.  
 depōno (3), *I lay aside, put away*.  
 deserit, (*he*) *deserts*.  
 desertum, *a desert*.  
 despēro (1), *I despair*.  
 Deus (2), *God*.  
 devolvitur, *it is rolled down, it rolls down*.  
 devōrō (1), *I devour*.  
**dexter**, *dextra, dextrum, right*; *dextrū, on the right hand*.  
 dicere, *to say, to plead*.  
 dicitur, (*he*) *is said*.  
 dico (3), *I say, I tell*.  
 die (abl. sing. of dies).  
 diebus (abl. plur. of dies).  
**dies** (5, masc.), *day*.  
**difficilis**, e, *difficult* (superl. difficillimus).  
 digitus (2), *finger*.  
 dilapsus, a, um, *disappearing, gliding away*.

## D

diligentia (1), *diligence, industry.*  
 dimitto (3), *I dismiss.*  
**dissimilis**, *e., unlike* (superl. *dis-simillimus*).  
**diu** (adverb), *for a long time;*  
*diutius*, *for a longer time;*  
*diutissime*, *for a very long time.*  
**diversus**, *different.*  
**dives** (gen. *divitiae*), *rich.*  
**divinus**, *divine, godlike.*  
**divitiae**, *riches.*  
**dixit** (from *dico*), *he said.*  
**do** (1), *I give; perf. dēdi; da, give!*  
**dolor** (gen. *dolōris*), *grief, pain.*  
**domare**, *to tame, subdue.*  
**dominatio** (gen. *dominatiōnis*), *rule, tyranny.*  
**dominus** (2), *lord, master (of slaves).*  
**domum**, *(to) home.*  
**domus** (see p. 122, fem.), *house.*  
**dormio** (4), *I sleep.*  
**ducenti**, *ae, a, two hundred.*  
**ducit**, *(he) leads; dueunt, (they) lead.*  
**duco** (3), *I lead.*  
**dulcis**, *e., sweet, pleasant.*  
**dunn**, *white.*  
**duo**, (see p. 147), *two.*  
**duodeviginti**, *eighteen.*  
**dux** (gen. *dūcis*), *leader, general.*

## E

**e**, ex (with abl.), *from, out of.*  
 e proximo, *from, quite near.*  
**edūcit**, *(he) leads out, draws out;*  
*educunt*, *(they) lead out;*  
*educitur*, *is led out.*  
**efficit**, *(he) makes.*  
**effigiem** (acc. of *effigies*), *figure, ghost.*  
**effodit**, *(he) digs up, digs out.*  
**ego** (p. 163), *I.*

## E

**egrēgius**, *remarkable, extraordinary.*  
**elidit**, *(he) crushes.*  
**eligo** (3), *I choose out.*  
**emit**, *(he) bought.*  
**emitto** (3), *I send out.*  
**en**, *see! behold!*  
**enim**, *for.*  
**ensis** (gen. *ensis*, masc.), *sword..*  
**eorum** (gen. plur. of *is*), *of them, their.*  
**eos** (acc. plur. of *is*), *them.*  
**epistula**, *letter.*  
**epūlē**, *banquet.*  
**ēques** (gen. *equitēs*), *a horseman.*  
**equites**, *cavalry.*  
**equus** (2), *horse.*  
**erat**, *was.*  
**ergo**, *therefore, then.*  
**eripio** (3), *I snatched out, escape.*  
**erat**, *(he) wonders.*  
**error** (gen. *errōris*), *wandering.*  
**erūdio**, *I teach.*  
**eruptio** (gen. *eruptiōnis*), *a sally.*  
**et**, *and; et—et, both—and.*  
**etiam**, *also.*  
**Etrusci**, *the Etruscans.*  
**ex** (with abl.), *from; ex haec parte, on this side.*  
**exaero** (1), *I blind.*  
**excēdit**, *(he) goes out; excedat, let him go out, depart.*  
**excidium**, *overthrow.*  
**excipluntur**, *(they) are received.*  
**exclāmat**, *(he) calls out, exclaims.*  
**exerceo**, *I exercise.*  
**exercitus** (4), *army.*  
**exiguus**, *small, insignificant.*  
**exit**, *(he) goes out; exeunt, (they) go out.*  
**expōno** (3), *I put out.*  
**expūlit**, *(he) expelled, drove out.*  
**expulsus**, *having been expelled.*  
**exspectat**, *(he) awaits; exspectant, (they) await.*  
**exsurgunt**, *(they) rise up.*

## E

**extra** (with acc.), *outside*.  
**extrēmus**, *extreme*.  
**exuo** (3), *I take off*.

## F

**facētus**, *witty, facetious*.  
**faciēs**, *face*.  
**faciliś**, *e, easy* (superl. faciliūsus).  
**faciūs** (gen. faciūris), *deed, crime*.  
**faciō**, *I make, do*; *fecī*, *I have made*; *factus*, *having been made*.  
**facīt**, *(he) makes*; *faciunt* (*they*) *make*; *certiōrem facit*, *(he) informs*.  
**facltas** (gen. facultatis), *a chance*.  
**faclundus**, *eloquent*.  
**fagus** (2, fem.), *a beech-tree*.  
**fama**, *report*.  
**fāmes**, *hunger*.  
**fecī** (perf. of facio), *I made*.  
**feliciter**, *happily, successfully*.  
**femina**, *a woman*.  
**fēra**, *a wild beast*.  
**fere**, *almost*.  
**ferox** (gen. ferōcis), *fierce, proud*.  
**ferrum**, *iron, dagger, sword*.  
**ferī**, *(he) brings, carries*.  
**ferus**, *fierce, wild*.  
**fervens** (gen. ferventis), *red-hot*.  
**fessus**, *tired*.  
**fidiſ**, *faithful*.  
**filia**, *daughter* (the first i in filia and filius is long).  
**filius**, *son*.  
**filum**, *a thread*.  
**finis** (gen. finis, mase.), *end*;  
*fines*, *boundaries, territory*.  
**finitimus**, *neighbouring*.  
**firmus**, *firm*.  
**flamma**, *flame*.  
**flavus**, *golden*.  
**flexuōsus** (adjective), *winding*.  
**flexūra**, *winding, turn*.  
**floreus**, *flowery, made of flowers*.

## F

**flos** (gen. flōris), *flower*.  
**fluctus** (4), *wave*.  
**fluēre**, *to flow*.  
**flumen** (gen. fluminis), *river*.  
**foedus** (gen. foedoris), *treaty*.  
**foetus** (adj.), *hideous, gloomy*.  
**fons** (gens. fontis, mase.), *a spring (of water)*.  
**foris** (adverb), *out of doors*; *foras*, *out of doors* (when going out of doors is spoken of).  
**forte** (adverb), *by chance, as it happened*.  
**fortis** (abl. plur., fortibus), *strong, brave*.  
**fortiter**, *bravely*; comp. *fortius*, *more bravely*; superl. *fortissime*, *very bravely*.  
**fovea**, *a pit*.  
**fovet**, *(he) cherishes*.  
**frāter** (gen. sing., fratris; gen. plur., fratrum), *brother*.  
**fremēre**, *to roar*.  
**frigus** (gen. frigoris), *cold*.  
**frons** (gen. frondis), *leaf*.  
**frons** (gen. frontis), *front, forehead*.  
**frumentum**, *corn*.  
**frustra**, *in vain*.  
**fuga**, *flight*.  
**fugo** (1), *I put to flight*.  
**fugit**, *(he) flies, escapes*.  
**fugiunt**, *(they) fly, escape*.  
**fuit**, *was*.  
**fulgur** (gen. fulgūris), *lightning*;  
*fulgura*, *flashes of lightning*.  
**funda**, *a sling*.  
**fundo** (3), *I pour, I melt*.  
**fur** (gen. furis), *a thief*.

## G

**galen**, *helmet*.  
**Galli**, *the Gauls*.  
**Gallieus**, *Gaulic, belonging to the Gauls*.

## G

**gelidus**, *cold*.  
**gemitus**, *groaning*.  
**gens** (gen. gentis), *tribe, nation*.  
**gentes** (plur. of gens), *nation, tribe*.  
**génus** (gen. generis), *a kind*.  
**gerit**, *he carries, wears*.  
**Germánus**, *a German, German*.  
**géro**, *carry, bear; bellum gerere, to wage war*.  
**gigantes**, *giants*.  
**gladius**, *a sword*.  
**gloria**, *glory*.  
**gloriósus**, *glorious*.  
**gradus** (gen. gradús), *a step*.  
**Graeci**, *the Greeks*.  
**Graecia**, *Greece*.  
**Graeculus**, *a little Greek*.  
**grámen** (gen. gráminis), *grass*.  
**grátus**, *welcome, pleasant, pleasing; gratus in te, thankful to (towards) you*.  
**grávis**, *e, heavy, deep*.  
**grex** (gen. grégis, mase.), *a flock*.

## II

**habeo**; orationem habere, *to deliver a speech*; consilium habere, *to hold counsel, to hold a meeting*.  
**habet**, *(he) has, keeps*; **habent**, *(they) have, keep*; **habetur**, *is considered*.  
**habitabat**, *lived*.  
**habito** (1), *I inhabit*.  
**hanc** (sing. acc. fem. of hic), *this*.  
**hasta**, *a spear*.  
**haud multum**, *not much*.  
**haustus** (4), *a draught, a drink*.  
**heri** (adv.), *yesterday*.  
**heus!** *Ho!*  
**hic** (see p. 170), *this*.  
**hiems** (gen. hiémis), *winter*.  
**his** (abl. plur. of hic), *these*.  
**Hispánia**, *Spain*.

## H

**hodie** (adv.), *to-day*.  
**homo** (gen. homínis), *a man*.  
**honestus**, *honourable*.  
**honoravisti**, *you have honoured, done honour to*.  
**hora**, *hour*.  
**horribile** (from horribilis), *horrible*.  
**horridus**, *matted (hair)*.  
**hortus** (2), *garden*.  
**hospes** (gen. hospítis), *a guest*.  
**hostis** (gen. hostis), *an enemy; hostes, the enemy*.  
**hue** (adv.), *hither*.  
**humanissimi**, *the most civilised*.  
**humánuS**, *human*.  
**humus** (2, fem.), *ground, earth*.

## I

**ibat**, *(he) was going, walking*.  
**ibi** (adv.), *there*.  
**idem** (see p. 176), *the same*.  
**igitur**, *therefore*.  
**ignarus**, *ignorant*.  
**ignis** (gen. ignis), *fire*.  
**ignōro** (1), *I am ignorant of, do not know*.  
**ille** (nou. sing. fem. illa, gen. sing. illius, acc. plur. fem. illas; see p. 170), *that*.  
**illo** (sing. abl. mase. or neut. of ille), *that*.  
**illo** (adv.), *thither, to that place*.  
**imágō** (gen. imaginis, fem.), *image, likeness*.  
**imber** (gen. imbris), *shower of rain*.  
**imberbis**, *beardless*.  
**imbuit**, *dyes*.  
**immémor** (gen. immemoris), *unmindful, forgetful*.  
**impedit** capiti, *overhangs his head*.  
**imperátor**, *general (in V.), emperor*.  
**imperium**, *rule*.  
**impétus** (4), *charge, rush*.

## I

**impiger**, *impigra*, *impigrum*, *active, energetic.*  
**impleo** (perf. *implēvi*), *I fill.*  
**implicitus**, *a*, *un*, *enveloped.*  
**implorant**, *(they) entreat for.*  
**implōro** (3), *I entreat for.*  
**impono** (3), *I put on.*  
**impōsus**, *set, perched.*  
**improbus**, *wicked.*  
**impūdens**, *impudent, shameless.*  
**imus**, *lowest ; ad imum (colleum), to the bottom (of the hill).*  
**in**, *with abl., in, on ; with acc., into, on to, against.*  
**inesditus**, *unheard of.*  
**inceptum**, *undertaking.*  
**incertus**, *uncertain.*  
**incident**, *(he) falls into ; incident, (they) fall into.*  
**incipio**, *I begin.*  
**incipiat**, *(he) urges on ; incitant, (they) urge on.*  
**incitatis equis**, *their horses having been urged on ; (with their horses at a gallop).*  
**incōla**, *an inhabitant.*  
**incōlo** (3), *I inhabit ; incolunt, (they) inhabit.*  
**ineultus**, *uncivilised.*  
**incursio** (gen. *incursiōnis*), *assault, inroad.*  
**inducuntur**, *are led on.*  
**infensus**, *a. um, enraged, furious.*  
**inficiunt**, *(they) dye.*  
**infigo** (3), *I thrust in, dig in.*  
**infinitus**, *infinite, innumerable.*  
**ingens** (gen. *ingentis*, abl. *ingenti*, nom. plur. neut., *ingentia*), *huge.*  
**ingratus**, *ungrateful.*  
**in his**, *among them.*  
**iniquus**, *unfavourable.*  
**init**, *(he) forms.*  
**injicit**, *(he) throws over, thrusts.*  
**injuria**, *injury, injustice.*  
**inquit**, *(he) says.*

## I

**insidiae**, *snares.*  
**instat**, *approaches, is almost come.*  
**instruo** (3), *I drew up.*  
**instūla**, *island.*  
**instūper**, *on the top.*  
**intellēgit**, *(he) knows of, understands ; from intellego (3).*  
**intentus** (adjective), *intent.*  
**inter** (with acc.), *among, between.*  
**interdum** (adverb), *sometimes.*  
**interficio**, *I kill : interficere, to kill ; interficiunt, (they) kill ; interficitur, he is killed, put to death ; (perf. *interfeci*).*  
**interrogo** (1), *I ask, question.*  
**intra** (with acc.), *within, inside.*  
**intrat**, *(he) enters.*  
**intrōdo** (3, perf. *intrusi*), *I thrust in.*  
**intus** (adverb), *within.*  
**invēnio**, *I find ; invēni, I have found, I found ; inveniuntur, (they) are found.*  
**invisus**, *hateful.*  
**invito** (1), *I invite.*  
**ipse** (see p. 180), *himself, etc.*  
**ipse se interficit**, *he (himself) kills himself.*  
**irātus**, *angry, enraged.*  
**irrunt**, *(they) rush on.*  
**is** (gen. *eius*, see p. 176), *this ; he, she, it.*  
**iste** (see p. 181), *that (of yours).*  
**ita**, *so.*  
**Italia**, *Italy.*  
**itaque**, *so.*  
**iter** (neut.), *way ; iter facit, he marches.*  
**itērum**, *again ; iterum atque iterum, again and again.*

## J

**jācent**, *(they) lie.*  
**jācio** (perf. *jēci*), *I throw.*  
**jam**, *already.*

## J

janua, *door (of a house).*  
**Januarius** (adjective), *January.*  
**jubeo** (perf. *jussi*), *I order.*  
**jubet**, (*hc*) *orders.*  
**jucundus**, *pleasant.*  
**judex** (gen. *judicis*), *a judge.*  
**judicium**, *a trial, judgment.*  
**judico** (1), *I judge.*  
**jus** (gen. *juris*), *justice, right.*  
**jussa**, *orders.*  
**jussus** (gen. *jussūs*), *order, command.*  
**justitia**, *justice.*  
**justus**, *just.*  
**juvēnīs** (gen. sing. *juvenis*, gen. plur. *juvenum*), *a young man.*  
**juventus** (gen. *juventūtis*, fem.), *youth.*

## L

**labor** (gen. *labōris*, acc. *laborem*), *toil, labour.*  
**laboro** (1), *I work.*  
**labrum**, *lip.*  
**labyrinthus**, *labyrinth, maze.*  
**lac** (gen. *lactis*), *milk.*  
**lacēro** (1), *I tear apart, in pieces.*  
**lacrima**, *a tear.*  
**laetus**, *happy, joyful ; laeti inventi, are delighted to find.*  
**lapis** (gen. *lápidis*, masc.), *a stone.*  
**largus**, *abundant.*  
**latus** (gen. *latēris*), *side, flank.*  
**latus**, *broad.*  
**laudat**, (*hc*) *praises ; laudant, (they) praise ; laudatur, is praised ; laudantur, are praised.*  
**laus** (gen. *laudis*), *praise.*

**legātus** (2), *ambassador.*  
**legibus** (dat. plur. of *lex*), *laws.*  
**legio** (gen. *legiōnis*, fem.), *a legion.*  
**legit**, (*hc*) *reads ; legunt, (they) read ; legitur, is read.*  
**leutus**, *slow.*

## L

**leo** (gen. *leōnis*), *a lion.*  
**lēviter**, *gently, softly.*  
**lex** (gen. *legis*), *law.*  
**liber** (gen. *libri*), *a book.*  
**liber**, *a, um, free.*  
**liberātus**, *set free.*  
**liberi**, *children.*  
**libēro** (1), *I set free ; liberare, to set free.*  
**lignum**, *wood, log of wood.*  
**lingua Latina**, *the Latin tongue, language.*  
**litus** (gen. *litōris*), *shore, coast.*  
**lōcus** (2), *a place.*  
**longe** (adverb), *by far, far, a g. ut dcal.*  
**longius** (adverb), *farther, at some distance.*  
**longurius**, *a long pole.*  
**longus**, *long.*  
**loquax** (gen. *loquācis*), *talkative.*  
**lorica**, *a cuirass.*  
**luce** (abl. sing. of *lux*), *light, dawn.*  
**lumen**, *the light.*  
**luna**, *the moon.*  
**lux** (gen. *lucis*), *light, dawn.*

## M

**mācie** (abl. sing. of *macies*), *with leanness.*  
**madidus**, *wet.*  
**magīcūs** (adjective), *magic.*  
**magister** (gen. *magistri*), *a master (of pupils).*  
**magnitudo** (gen. *magnitudinis*), *size.*  
**magnopēre**, *greatly.*  
**magnus**, *great, large, big (comp. major, superl. maximus).*  
**majōres**, *ancestors.*  
**mālus**, *bad ; pejor, worse ; pesimūs, worst.*  
**mālus**, *a mast.*  
**mānare**, *to flow, drop, stream.*

## M

**māne**, *in the morning.*  
**mānet**, (*he*) *remains*; **manent**, (*they*) *remain*.  
**mānus** (4, fem.), *a hand, a force of soldiers*; *pugnāt in manibus faciunt, they engage in a hand to hand fight.*  
**māre** (gen. *maris*), *sra.*  
**maritimus** (adjective), *belonging to the sea.*  
**mater** (gen. sing. *matris*, gen. plur. *matrum*), *mother.*  
**maximus**, *greatest, largest, biggest (superl. of magnus).*  
**me**; acc. of *ego*.  
*mecum (me and cum), with me.*  
**mēdius**, *middle; in agreement with a noun, in the middle of.*  
**mēlior** (neut. *melius*, gen. *melioris*, comp. of *bonus*), *better.*  
**melius** (adverb), *better.*  
*membrum, member, limb.*  
**mēmor** (gen. *mēmoris*), *mindful.*  
*memoria, memory.*  
*mensa, table.*  
*mensis* (gen. *mensis*, masc.), *month.*  
**mercātor** (gen. *mercātoris*), *a merchant.*  
**messis** (gen. *messis*), *harvest.*  
*metallum, a metal.*  
*metu (abl. of metus), with fear.*  
*metus (4), fear.*  
*meus, my, mine.*  
*mi*, voc. of *meus*.  
**miles** (gen. *militis*), *soldier.*  
*militia, military service.*  
*mille* (indeclinable in sing., plur. *milia*, see p. 149), *a thousand.*  
*minax* (gen. *minācis*), *threatening.*  
**minimus**, *least, smallest (superl. of parvus).*  
*ministerium, ministry, attendance.*  
**minor** (neut. *minus*, gen. *minōris*, less, smaller (comp. of *parvus*); *natu minor* younger.

## M

**miror** (1), *I wonder at.* This is what is called a "deponent" verb. It has active meaning, but passive form.  
**mirus**, *wonderful.*  
**miser**, *miserā, misérum, unhappy, wretched, miserable.*  
*miserandus, pitous.*  
*misericordia, pity.*  
**mittit**, (*he*) *sends*; **mittunt**, (*they*) *send.*  
**mittitur**, *is sent.*  
**mittunt**, (*they*) *send.*  
*mixtus, a, um, mixed.*  
*mōdo (adverb), only.*  
*mōdus, manner.*  
**molestus**, *troublesome, unceasing (a nuisance).*  
**moneo**, *I warn, advise.*  
*mons (gen. *montis*), a mountain.*  
*monstrum, a monster.*  
**mora** (1), *delay.*  
*morbis (2), disease, sickness.*  
*mors (gen. *mortis*), death.*  
**mortuus**, a, um, dead.  
**mos** (gen. *mōris*), *temper, custom, habit, character.*  
*motus, a, um, moved.*  
**mox**, *soon.*  
*mulget*, (*he*) *milks.*  
**mulier** (gen. *muliēris*), *woman.*  
**multitudo** (gen. *multitudinis*), *multitude, a large number.*  
**multo** (adv.), *by much, much.*  
*multum, much.*  
**multus**, *much.*  
**munio**, *I fortify.*  
*mununt, (they) fortify.*  
**murmur** (gen. *murmūris*), *murmur, roar.*  
*murmuro* (1), *I murmur.*  
*murus (2), a wall.*

## N

**nam**, for.  
*narrant, (they) relate.*

## N

nātu (abl. of natus, 4), *by birth* ;  
 natu major, *older, elder* ;  
 natu minor, *younger* ; natu maximus, *oldest, eldest* ; natu minimus, *youngest*.  
**nātus**, *having been born* ; **duos annos natus**, *two years old*.  
**nauta** (1), *a sailor*.  
**nāvi** (abl. of navis), *in a ship*.  
**nāvis** (gen. navis), *a ship* ; **navis longa**, *a war-ship*.  
**nē** (used in asking a question, see p. 230).  
**nebula**, *a cloud*.  
**nece**, *now*.  
**neccat**, (*he*) *slays*.  
**neco** (1), *I slay*.  
**nēgo** (1), *I deny*. Negat se venire posse, *he says he cannot come*.  
**nēmo**, *nobody*.  
**neque**, *nor* ; **neque—neque**, *neither—nor* ; neque tamen, *nor yet, not however*.  
**nescio**, *I do not know*.  
**niger**, nigra, nigrum, *black*.  
**nihil** (not declined, neut.), *nothing*.  
**nimum**, *too much, too* ;  
**nobilis**, *noble*.  
**nobis**, from ego.  
**nocte** (abl. of nox), *in the night*.  
**nocturnus** (adjective), *belonging to the night, nightly, night*.  
**noluērunt**, (*they*) *would not, were not willing*.  
**nōmen** (gen. nōmīnis), *name*.  
**non**, *not* ; **non jam**, *no longer*.  
**nos** (nom. and acc.), *we, us*.  
**noster**, nostra, nostrum, *our*.  
**nōtus**, *known*.  
**novus**, *new, strange*.  
**nox** (gen. noctis), *night*.  
**nubes** (gen. nubis), *cloud*.  
**nullus** (see p. 183), *no*.  
**numerus** (2), *number*.  
**nunc**, *now*.

## N

**nunquam**, *never*.  
**nuntio** (1), *I announce*.  
**nuntius**, *a message, messenger*.

## O

ob (with acc.), *on account of*.  
**obiit**, (*he*) *died*.  
**obscurus**, *dark*.  
**obses** (gen. obsīdis), *hostage*.  
**obsident**, (*they*) *besiege*.  
**obsideo**, *I besiege*.  
**obtruncat**, (*he*) *cuts down, strikes down*.  
**occiditur**, (*he*) *is killed*.  
**occupabant**, (*they*) *occupied, seized*.  
**occupo** (1), *I seize*.  
**octoginta**, *eighty*.  
**oculus** (2), *eye*.  
**omne tempus**, *for all time, for ever*.  
**omnibus** (abl. plur. of omnis), *all*.  
**omnis**, *omne, all*.  
**ōnus** (gen. onēris), *burden*.  
**opem** (acc.), *aid*.  
**opere** (abl. of opus), *on the work*.  
**opportūnus**, *favourable*.  
**oppressus**, a, un, *oppressed, weighed down*.  
**opp̄imit** (from opp̄imo ; perf. oppressi), *overcomes, swamps*.  
**oppugno** (1), *I attack*.  
**optime** (adv.), *very well*.  
**optimus** (superl. of bonus), *very good, best*.  
**opus** (gen. opēris), *work*.  
**ora**, *shore*.  
**oratio** (gen. oratiōnis), *speech, oration*.  
**orātor** (gen. oratōris), *orator*.  
**orbē faciunt**, (*they*) *form circles (=our squares)*.  
**orbis** (gen. orbis, masc.), *a circle* ; *orbis terrarum, the world*.  
**ordo** (gen. ordinis, masc.), *rank*.  
**ore** (see ōs).

## O

**ornat**, *he adorns, decorates, equips, fits out; ornant, (they) adorn, etc.*  
**ornatus** (gen. *ornatūs*), *adornment, grand dress.*  
**oro** (1), *I pray.*  
**ōs** (gen. *oris*), *mouth, face.*  
**ōs** (gen. *ossis*), *a bone.*  
**ostium**, *entrance, door.*  
**ōvis** (gen. *ovis*), *a sheep.*

## P

**pacem** (acc. sing. of *pax*), *peace.*  
**paene**, *almost.*  
**pallidus**, *pale.*  
**pālus** (gen. *pali*), *stake.*  
**pālus** (gen. *palūdis*), *marsh.*  
**pānis** (gen. *panis*), *bread.*  
**par** (gen. *paris*), *equil.*  
**parens** (gen. *parentis*), *a parent.*  
**parēre** (inf. of *pareo*, with dat.), *to obey.*  
**paro** (1), *I prepare.*  
**pars** (gen. *partis*), *a part,*  
**partibus**; *multis partibus, a great deal.*  
**partim**, *partly.*  
**parvus**, *small, little.*  
**pasco**, *I feed; pascit, (he) feeds.*  
**passus** (4), *a pace* (see p. 149).  
**pater** (gen. sing. *patris*, gen. plur. *patrum*), *father.*  
**patres**, *the Fathers.*  
**patria**, *native country.*  
**pauci**, *a few.*  
**paullatim**, *by degrees, little by little.*  
**Paululum**, *for a bit.*  
**pauper** (gen. *paupēris*), *poor.*  
**pax** (gen. *pācis*), *peace.*  
**pecunia** (1), *money, a sum of money.*  
**pecus** (gen. *pecudis*), *a beast, animal.*  
**pēcus** (gen. *pecōris*), *a herd, flock.*

## P

**pedester** (pedestrīs, *pedestre* — adj.), *foot; copiae pedestres, foot-forces, infantry;* iter pedestre, *a journey on foot.*  
**pejor** (comp. of *missus*), *worse.*  
**pellibus** (abl. plur. of *pellis*), *with skins.*  
**pendent**, *(they) hang.*  
**pendit**, *(he) pays; pendunt, (they) pay.*  
**penētro** (1), *I penetrate, make my way.*  
**per** (with acc.), *through, during, over.*  
**percusus**, a, um, *stricken.*  
**percūtit**, *(he) strikes.*  
**periculum**, *danger.*  
**perpétuus**, *perpetual.*  
**pes** (gen. *pēdis*), *foot; in pedes se dederunt, took to their heels, ran away.*  
**pessimus** (superl. of *malus*), *worst, very bad.*  
**pestifer**, a, um, *pestilential, poisonous.*  
**pētit**, *(he) asks for, seeks; petunt, (they) ask for, seek.*  
**petunt**, *(they) seek; make for, attack.*  
**philosōphus**, *a philosopher.*  
**piger**, *pigra, pigrum, lazy.*  
**piscis**, *a fish.*  
**plebs** (gen. *plebis*), *the commons.*  
**plenus**, *full.*  
**plerique**, *the greater number, most.*  
**plurimus**, *very much; plurimi, very many.*  
**pōcūlum**, *a cup.*  
**pōēma** (gen. *pōēmītis*), *a poem.*  
**poena**, *penalty, punishment.*  
**poēta** (1), *a poet.*  
**polluitur**, *is polluted.*  
**pomum**, *fruit.*  
**pondus** (gen. *pondēris*), *weight.*  
**ponit**, *(he) places.*

## P

**pōno**, *I place*; *pōsui* (perf.), *I placed*, *I have placed*.  
**pons** (gen. *pontis*, mase.), *bridge*.  
*pomunt*, (*they*) *place*.  
**pōpulus** (2, fem.), *a poplar-tree*.  
*porrigit*, *he stretches forth*.  
**Porsina**, *Porsina* (king of the Etruscans).  
**porta**, *gate*, *door*.  
**portat**, (*he*) *carries*; **portant**, (*they*) *carry*.  
**portus** (4), *a harbour*.  
**posse** (inf. of *possum*), *to be able* (see *nego*).  
**possident**, (*they*) *possess*.  
**possideo**, *I possess*.  
**possunt**, *they are able*, *they can*.  
**post** (adverb), *afterwards*; prep. *behind*, *after*; *post Christum natum*, *after the birth of Christ* (our A.D. in dates).  
**posterus**, *next*, *following*.  
**postquam**, *after that*.  
**postremo** (adverb), *last of all*.  
**postremus**, *last*.  
**postulat**, (*he*) *demands*.  
**potens** (gen. *potentis*), *powerful*.  
**pōtest**, (*he*) *is able*, *can*; **possunt**, (*they*) *are able*, *can*.  
**potestas** (gen. *potestatis*), *power*.  
**praeceps** (gen. *praeципitis*), *headlong*, *precipitous*.  
**praecidit**, (*he*) *cuts off*.  
**praeclarissime**, *very splendidly*.  
**praeclarissimus**, *very celebrated*.  
**praedo** (gen. *praedōnis*), *a pirate*.  
**praemium**, *a reward*.  
**praestant**, (*they*) *excel*, *have the advantage*.  
**praeter** (with acc.), *besides*, *except*.  
**pratum**, *a meadow*.  
**prēcibus**, *with prayers*.  
**pretium**, *a price*.  
**prīmo** (adverb), *at first*.  
**primum** (adverb), *first*.  
**primus**, *first*.

## P

**princeps** (gen. *principis*), *chief*, *leader*.  
**prius** (adverb), *first*.  
**pro** (with abl.), *before*, *in front of*, *on behalf of*, *instead of*.  
**probo** (1), *I approve*.  
**procēdit**, (*he*) *advances*.  
**prodigium**, *a prodigy*, *wonder*.  
**proditor**, *traitor*.  
**proelium**, *battle*.  
**prohibet**, (*he*) *keeps off*.  
**projiciunt**, *they throw forth*.  
**pronus**, *headlong*.  
**prope** (with acc.), *near*.  
**prōpēro** (1), *I hasten*.  
**propius** (adverb), *nearer*.  
**prora** (1), *a prow*.  
**provoco** (1), *I challenge*.  
**proximus** (*the next*, *the following*); *e proximo*, *from quite near*.  
**prudentia**, *skill*.  
**publicus**, *public*.  
**puella** (1), *a girl*.  
**puer** (gen. *puēri*), *a boy*.  
**pugna**, *battle*.  
**pugnatur**, *it is fought*.  
**pugno** (1), *I fight*.  
**pulicher**, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, *beautiful*.  
**pulvis** (gen. *pulvēris*, mase.), *dust*.  
**Punicus**, *a um*, *Punic*; *Carthaginian*.  
**punio**, *I punish*.

## Q

**quadragesimus**, *fortieth*.  
**quadringentesimus**, *four-hundredth*.  
**quaes** (non plur. fem. of *qui*), *which*.  
**quaerit**, *he asks for*, *inquires for*; *quaerunt*, (*they*) *ask for*, *seek*.  
**quam**, *than*; with a note of exclamation, *how!*  
**quamquam**, *although*.

## Q

**quando**, *when?*  
**quatit**, *(he) shakes.*  
**-que**, *and.* The *que* is attached to the second of the two words; "brothers and sisters" is *fratres sororesque* (or *fratres et sorores*).  
**quercus** (f., fem.), *an oak.*  
**qui**, *who* (see p. 190).  
**qui** (nom. plur. of *qui*), *those who.*  
**quia**, *because.*  
**quid**, *what?*  
**quidam**, *quaedam*, *quoddam*, *a certain;* *quidam* (nom. plur. masc.), *certain.*  
**quidem**, *indeed.*  
**quies** (gen. *quiētis*), *rest, quiet.*  
*quiētus*, *quiet, inactive,*  
*quinquagesimus*, *fiftieth.*  
*quinquaginta*,  *fifty.*  
*quinque*, *five.*  
**quis**, *who?*  
**quisque**, *each.*  
**quod** (neut. sing. nom. of *qui*), *which.*  
**quod** (adverb), *because.*  
**quomodo**, *how?*  
**quondam**, *once.*  
**quot**, *how many?*  
**quoties**, *how often? in XIII., as often as.*

## R

**rādunt**, *(they) shave.*  
**rāmus**, *a branch.*  
**rapīdus**, *rapid.*  
**rarus**, *rare, extraordinary.*  
**recēdit**, *(he) retires; recedunt, (they) retire, draw back.*  
**recte**, *rightly.*  
**reddo**, *I give back, return; redde, give back!*  
**redeunt**, *(they) come back, return.*  
**redigit**, *(he) reduces, subdues; redigunt, (they) reduce.*

## R

**redit**, *(he) returns, comes back;*  
**redeunt**, *(they) return, come back.*  
**redūcit**, *(he) leads back.*  
**regina** (1), *a queen.*  
**regio** (gen. *regiōnis*), *district, region.*  
**regius**, *royal.*  
**regno** (1), *I reign.*  
**regnum**, *a reign.*  
**rego** (3), *I rule, steer.*  
**regulus**, *a prince.*  
**religo** (1), *I tie.*  
**relinquo** (3), *I leave; reliqui, have left, I left.*  
**reliqui**, *the rest, the remainder.*  
**removet**, *(he) removes, withdraws.*  
**renovatur**, *is renewed.*  
**res** (5), *thing, fact, matter, affair.*  
**respondeat**, *(he) answers.*  
**respublica**, *state, commonwealth* (*publica* is an adjective agreeing with *res*).  
**restat**, *(he) remains.*  
**retrahit**, *(he) draws back; retrahunt, (they) draw back, drag back.*  
**revertit**, *(he) returns; revertunt, (they) return.*  
**reverto**, (3, perf. *reverti*), *I return, come back.*  
**rex** (gen. *rēgis*), *a king.*  
**ridens**, *smiling, laughing.*  
**rideo**, *I laugh.*  
**robustus**, *strong.*  
**rogare**, *to ask.*  
**Romānus**, *Roman; Romani, the Romans.*  
**rōsa** (1), *a rose.*  
**rota**, *wheel.*  
**ruber**, *rubra, rubrum, red.*  
**ruina**, *downfall.*  
**rupes** (gen. *rupis*), *a rock.*  
**rure**, *in the country.*  
**rus** (gen. *ruris*), *country.*  
**rusticus**, *country, (adj.) rustic.*

## S

**saepe**, often; **saepius**, more often; **saepissime**, very often.  
**saevus**, cruel, fierce.  
**saginabat**, (*he*) used to feast, gorge.  
**sagitta**, an arrow.  
**sagittarius**, using bow and arrows; sagittarii, archers.  
**saluber**, bris, bre, healthy.  
**salus** (gen. salutis), safety.  
**sanguis** (gen. sanguinis), blood.  
**sapiens** (gen. sapientis), wise, a wise man.  
**sapientia**, wisdom.  
**saxum**, rock.  
**scio**, I know.  
**scriba**, a secretary.  
**se**, himself, etc. (see pp. 167, 181).  
 se ipse interficit, (*he*) kills himself.  
**secōdo** (3), I screde, withdraw.  
**secum**, with him (cum, with, is tacked on to se).  
**secundus**, second.  
**secutūrus**, in order to follow, with the intention of following.  
**sed**, but.  
**sēdeo**, I sit.  
**sēges** (gen. segētis), a crop.  
**Semīlē** (gen. Semīlēs), Semele.  
**semper**, always.  
**senectus** (gen. senectūtis, fem.), old age.  
**sēnēx** (gen. sing. senis, gen. plur. senum), an old man.  
**sento** (perf. sensi), I feel.  
**septendecim**, seventeen.  
**sequitur**, (*he*) follows.  
**sermo** (gen. sermōnis), conversation, talk; in X., language.  
**serpens** (gen. serpentis), a serpent.  
**sērunt**, (they) sow.  
**servat**, keeps.  
**servus** (2), a slave.  
**sēscenti**, six hundred.  
**severus**, strict, severe.  
**si**, if.

## S

si cui, if to any one; si quid, if . . . anything.  
**sic**, so.  
**siccāt**, (*he*) dries, drains.  
**siccus**, dry.  
**Sicilia**, Sicily.  
**signum**, a sign, mark.  
**silentium**, silence.  
**silva** (1), a wood, forest.  
**sūnīlia** (plur. neut. of similis), like.  
**similis**, e, like (superl. simillimus).  
**simul atque**, as soon as.  
**sin**, but if.  
**sūne** (with abl.), without.  
**singularis**, extraordinary, single.  
**sinister**, sinistra, sinistrum, left; sinistrā, on the left hand.  
**sūtit**, thirsty, is thirsty.  
**socius** (2), a companion.  
**sol** (gen. solis), the sun.  
**Solon**, Solon (a Greek legislator).  
**solum**, earth.  
**solum** (adverb), only.  
**solus** (adjective), alone (see p. 183).  
**solvo** (3), I cut loose, put off (a ship).  
**somnus**, sleep.  
**soror** (gen. sorōris), sister.  
**spatiōsus**, spacious, roomy.  
**spectaculūn**, sight, spectacle.  
**spectat**, (*it*) looks.  
**speculatōres**, the scouts.  
**specus** (gen. specūs), a cave.  
**spes** (5), a hope.  
**splendidus**, splendid.  
**spuma**, foam.  
**squalidus**, dirty.  
**stantem** (acc. of stans), standing.  
**stat**, (*he*) stands.  
**statim**, at once.  
**sternit**, (*he*) lays; sternunt, (they) lay.  
**stipendium**, pay.  
**strepitus** (gen. strepitūs), clanking.  
**sub** (with abl.), under; sub vērūm, about evening-time.

## S

subito, suddenly.  
 sublatus est, was removed.  
 submittuntur, (they) are sent up.  
 subrideo (perf. subrisi), I smile.  
 sudor (gen. sudoris), sweat.  
 sui, his own men.  
 sumere, to take.  
 summovent, (they) remove.  
**summus**, highest, extreme, great;  
**summus collis**, the top of the  
 hill; summa vi, with all  
 their might; summis Vols-  
 corum copiis, with all the  
 forces of the Volsci.  
 suo quisque tempore, each at his  
 own time (at the time that he  
 finds convenient).  
 super (with abl.), above.  
**superat**, (he) defeats; **superant**,  
 (they) defeat; in X., is greater  
 than.  
 superatus, a, um, overcome.  
 superbia, pride.  
 superbis, proud.  
**superior**, higher.  
 superiorius (neut. of superior), upper.  
 supersunt, (they) remain over, are  
 left.  
 supra (with acc.), over, above.  
**surdus**, deaf.  
 surgit, (he) rises.  
 sustinent, withstand, stand up  
 against.  
**suum**, his (own), their (own).

## T

tabes (3), wasting, consumption,  
 decay.  
**taceo**, I am silent, I hold my  
 tongue.  
 talis, e (gen. talis), such, the fol-  
 lowing.  
 tamen, however.  
 tamque, and so.

## T

tandem, at length.  
 tantus, so great, such.  
 taurus, a bull.  
 te (acc. of tu), you (of one person).  
 telum, a dart.  
 tempestas (gen. tempestatis),  
 storm.  
 templum, temple.  
**tempus** (gen. temporis), time.  
**tener**, tenera, tenerum, tender.  
 tenuet, (he) holds; tenent (they)  
 hold; from teneo.  
 tergum, back, rear.  
**terra** (1), land.  
**terret**, (he) frightens; **terrent**,  
 (they) frighten; **terretur**, is  
 frightened; **terrentur**, are  
 frightened.  
 terribilis (from *terribilis*), terrible.  
 timens, fearing.  
**timet**, (he) fears; **timent**, (they)  
 fear.  
 timor (gen. timoris), fear.  
 tollitque, and (he) lifts, takes up.  
 tollo (3), I take away.  
 torrens (gen. torrentis), torrent,  
 brook.  
 torrens (gen. torrentis, adj.), burn-  
 ing, as it burned.  
 totius (gen. sing. of totus).  
**totus**, a, um, the whole (see p. 183).  
 tractat, (he) treats.  
 trans (with acc.), across.  
**transit**, (he) crosses; **transeunt**,  
 (they) cross.  
 trecenti, ae, a, three hundred.  
 tredicim, thirteen.  
 trepidus, excited.  
**tres** (see p. 147), three.  
 tribunus, tribunal, throne.  
 tricesimus, thirtieth.  
 triginta, thirty.  
**tristis**, e, sad.  
 Troja, Troy.  
 trudit, pushes.  
 tu (see p. 167), you (of one person).

## T

tulit, (*he*) took.  
tum, then.  
tunc, then.  
turba, a crowd.  
turbat, (*he*) throws into confusion.  
tuus, your (of one person).

## U

ubi, where?  
undeviginti, nineteen.  
undique (adverb), from all sides.  
unus, one (see p. 183).  
urbanus (adjective), belonging to  
the town, town.  
urbe (abl. of urb.).  
urbis (gen. urbis), city.  
urit, (*he*) burns.  
ursus, a bear.  
usu, from the use.  
usus (gen. usus, abl. usu), use,  
experience.  
ut, as.  
uter (see p. 186), which? (of two).  
utilis, e, useful.  
uxor (gen. uxoris), wife.

## V

valeo (2), I am well; valē, fare-  
well, good-bye (to one person);  
valēte, farewell, good-bye (to  
more than one person).  
validus, strong.  
vallis (gen. vallis), valley.  
vallum, a rampart.  
varius, various, different.  
vastat, (*he*) lays waste; vastant,  
(they) lay waste.  
vastus, vast.  
vectigal (gen. vectigalis), a tax.  
vel, or.  
velut, like, as if.  
vénio, I come; vénī, I have come,  
I came.

## V

věnit, (*he*) comes; veniunt, (they)  
come.  
venter (gen. ventris), the stomach,  
belly.  
ventus, the wind.  
ver (gen. veris, neut.), spring (the  
season).  
verbum, a word.  
verisimilis, e, probable.  
vero (adverb), however.  
versus (4), a verse.  
vertunt, (they) turn.  
verus, true.  
vespère (abl. of vesper), in the  
evening.  
vester, tra, trum, your (of more  
than one person).  
vestis (gen. vestis), clothing;  
vestes, clothes.  
vestiuntur, they are clothed, clothe  
themselves.  
vetus (gen. veteris), old.  
vi (abl. of vis), force, might.  
via, way, path, road, course.  
viātor (gen. viatōris), a traveller.  
vibro (1), I brandish.  
vicinus, neighbouring.  
victima, a victim.  
victoria, victory.  
victus, a, um, conquered.  
videns, seeing.  
video, I see.  
videt, (*he*) sees; vident, (they)  
see.  
videtur, is seen, seems; videntur,  
are seen, seem.  
vigeo, I flourish.  
viginti (indeclinable), twenty.  
villa, a country-house (dominus, a  
town-house).  
vincio, I bind.  
vincit, he conquers.  
vincio (perf. vici), I conquer.  
vinculum, a chain.  
vindicio (1), I punish.  
vinum, wine.

## V

**vir** (gen. *viri*), *a man*; the word is only used in praise, e.g. *bonus vir*; "all men" is *omnes homines*.

**virtus** (gen. *virtutis*), *bravery, courage, virtue*.

**vis** (abl. *vi*), *with force, strength*.

**vita** (1), *life*.

**vitis** (gen. *vitis*), *a vine*.

**vito** (1), *I avoid*.

**vitrin**, *wound*.

**vivo** (3), *I live*.

**vivunt**, *(they) live*.

**vix**, *scarcely*.

**voco** (1), *I call*.

**Volsci**, *the Volscians*.

**volueris**, *a bird*.

## V

**volumen** (gen. *voluminis*), *coil*.

**voluptas** (gen. *voluptatis*), *pleasure*.

**volvitur**, *is whirled*.

**vos**, *you* (plural of tu).

**vox** (gen. *vōris*), *voice*.

**vulgo** (adv.), *generally, commonly, mostly*.

**vulgus** (2, neut.), *the common people*.

**vulnerat**, *(he) wounds*.

**vulneratus**, *a, um, wounded*.

**vulneribus** (abl. plur. of *vulnus*), *with lapidum, by the wounds inflicted by the stones*.

**vulnus** (gen. *vulneris*), *wound*.

**vult**, *(he) wishes*.

**vultus** (1), *look, expression*.

## ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.

*Obs. A figure after a word denotes the declension or conjugation to which it belongs.*

### A

- About**, (concerning), *de* (with ablative).
- abundant**, *largus*.
- active**, *impiger*, *gra*, *grum*.
- adorn**, (he) adorns, *ornat*; (they) adorn, *ornunt*.
- adversity**, *res adversae* (*i.e.* untoward matters).
- advice**, *consilium*.
- affair**, *res* (5).
- afraid**, (he) is afraid, *timet*; (they) are afraid, *timent*.
- again**, *iterum*.
- aid**, *auxilium*.
- Alexander**, *Alecvander* (gen. *Alexandri*).
- all**, *omnis*, *omne*.
- alone**, *solutus* (see p. 183); (adverb), *solum*.
- already**, *jam*.
- always**, *semper*.
- ambassador**, *legatus* (2).
- ancestors**, *majores*.
- ancient**, *antiquus*.
- and**, *et* or *que*.
- animal**, *animal* (gen. *animālis*).
- annoying**, *molestus*.
- another**, *alius* (see p. 183).
- are off**, **away**, *absunt*.
- Aristophanes**, *Aristophānes*.
- arms**, *arma* (plural).
- army**, *exercitus* (4).

### A

- arrival**, *adventus* (4).
- ashes**, *cinēres*; plur. of *cinis* (gen. *cineris*).
- ask**, (he) asks for, *petit*; (they) ask for, *petunt*.
- assist**, (he) assists me, *mihi adest*; (they) assist me, *mihi adsuunt*.
- at**; how translated before names of towns, see note, p. 164.
- audacity**, *audāciū*.
- Aulus**, *Aulus*.
- autumn**, *autumnus* (2).
- avoid** (I), *vito* (1).
- await** (I), *caspectō* (1).

### B

- bad**, *mālus*.
- battle**, *pugna* (1).
- before**, *pro* (with ablative).
- begin**, I begin, *incipio*.
- besiege**, I besiege, *obsideo*.
- best**, *optimus*.
- better** (adj.), *mēltior*; (adv.), *mēlēus*.
- bid**, (he) bids, *jubet*; (they) bid, *jubent*.
- big**, *magnus*.
- bird**, *avis*.
- black**, *niger*, *nigra*, *nigrum*.
- blame**, (he) blames, *culpat*; (they) blame, *culpant*.
- blood**, *sanguis* (gen. *sanguīnis*, masc.)

## B

bodily exercise (he takes), *corpus exercet*.  
 body, *corpus* (gen. *corpōris*).  
 bold, *audax* (see p. 112).  
 bone, *os* (gen. *ossis*, neut.).  
 book, *liber* (gen. *libri*).  
 both, *et*.  
 boy, *puer* (2).  
 brave, *fortis* (see p. 109).  
 bravely, *fortiter*; more bravely, *fortius*; most bravely, *fortissime*.  
 bread, *pānis* (gen. *pānis*, masc.).  
 break up (to), *solvēre*.  
 brigand, *prādō* (gen. *prādōnis*).  
 broad, *lātus*.  
 brother, *frāter* (gen. sing. *frātris*, gen. plur. *frātrium*).  
 build, (he) builds, *aedificat*; (they) build, *aedificant*.  
 burden, *trāns* (gen. *trānsis*).  
 burn, he burns, *urit*; they burn, *urunt*.  
 bust, *imago* (gen. *imaginis*).  
 but, *sed*.  
 by; by a person, *a* or *ab* (*ab* always before a vowel), with the ablative; by a thing, the ablative without *a* or *ab*.

## C

Caesar, *Caesar* (gen. *Caesāris*).  
 call, (he) calls, *vocat*; (they) call, *vocant*.  
 camp, *castrā* (2), plural.  
 can, (he) can, *pōtest*; they can, *possunt*; he cannot, *non potest*.  
 capital, *cipit* (gen. *cipitīs*).  
 captive, *captivus*.  
 capture (1), *capio*, *cēpi*, *captus*; inf. *capere*.  
 carry (to), *portare*.  
 Carthaginian, *Carthaginiensis*.  
 Catullus, *Catullus*.  
 cause, *causa*.  
 cavalry, *equites* (plural of *eques*, a horseman).

## C

celebrated, *clarus*.  
 certain, *cūrtus*.  
 chapter, *capit* (gen. *capitīs*).  
 character, *mōres* (plural of *mos*).  
 charge, *impētus* (1).  
 charm, (he) charms, *delectat*; (they) charm, *delectant*.  
 cherish, (he) cherishes, *sovet*; (they) cherish, *sovent*.  
 choose out (I), *eligo*.  
 Cicero, *Cicero* (gen. *Cicerōnis*).  
 circle, *orbis* (gen. *orbis*, masc.).  
 citizen, *cīvis* (gen. *cīvis*).  
 city, *urbis* (gen. *urbis*).  
 city affairs, *res urbanae*.  
 class, *classis* (gen. *classis*).  
 clear, *clarus*.  
 clothes, *vestis* (gen. *vestis*).  
 cloud, *nūbris* (gen. *nūbris*).  
 coast, *litus* (gen. *litoris*).  
 cold, *frīgus* (gen. *frīgoris*).  
 cold (ad.), *frīgidus*, *gelidus*  
 collect (I), *colligo* (3).  
 colour, *color* (gen. *coloris*).  
 column, *agmen* (gen. *agminis*).  
 come, (he) comes, *vénit*; (they) come, *veniunt*.  
 come back, (we) comes back, *redit*; (they) come back, *redicunt*.  
 come together (to), *convenire*.  
 common people, *vulgaris* (2, neut.).  
 commons, *plebs* (gen. *plebis*).  
 commonwealth, *res publica*.  
 confusion (be thrown into), *turbat*.  
 consider, is considered, *habetur*; are considered, *habentur*.  
 consul, *consul* (gen. *consulīs*).  
 content, *contentus*.  
 conversation, *sermo* (gen. *sermōnis*).  
 Corinth, *Corinthus*.  
 Cornelia, *Cornelia*.  
 country, *rūs* (gen. *rūris*); country (adjective, as "country life"), *rusticus*; in the country, *rure*; to the country, *rūs*.

## C

**courage**, *virtus* (gen. *virtutis*, fem.)  
**crop**, *segitis* (gen. *segitis*).  
**cross**, (he) crosses, *superat*, transit;  
 (they) cross, *superant*, trans-  
*eunt*.  
**crown**, *crowna*.  
**cup**, *culice* (gen. *culicis*, masc.)

## D

**danger**, *peregrinum*.  
**daring** (noun), *audacia*.  
**daring** (adjective), *audax* (see p. 112).  
**dark**, *obscurus*.  
**dart**, *telum*.  
**dawn**, *Tun* (gen. *lucis*).  
**day**, *dies* (5, masc.); every day,  
*cotidie*; to-day, *hodie*; one  
 day, *aliquando*.  
**dead**, *morts*.  
**deaf**, *surdus*.  
**dear**, *carus*.  
**death**, *mors* (gen. *mortis*).  
**debt**, *urs alienum*.  
**December**, *December*, *bris*, *bre*;  
 in the month of December,  
*mensa Decembri*.  
**decorate**, (he) decorates, *ornat*;  
 (they) decorate, *ornant*.  
**defeat**, (he) defeats, *superat*;  
 (they) defeat, *superant*; are  
 defeated, *superantur*.  
**delight**, (it) delights, *delectat*;  
 (they) delight, *delectant*; is  
 delighted, *delectatur*; are de-  
 lighted, *delectantur*.  
**delightful**, *dulcis*.  
**Demosthenes**, *Demosthenes*.  
**dense**, *densus*.  
**desire**, I desire, *cupio*.  
**despise**, I despise, *contemno* (3).  
**difficult**, *difficilis*, *difficile* (for the  
 comparison, see p. 140).  
**diligence**, *diligentia*.  
**disgraceful**, *turpis*.  
**distant** (is), *abest*; are distant,  
*absunt*.

## D

**district**, *regio*.  
**do**, I do, *ago*, *facio*.  
**do not know** (I), *nescio*.  
**doors** (out of), *foras* (when going  
 out of doors is spoken of),  
*foris* (when being out is spoken  
 of).  
**draw up** (I), *instruo* (3).  
**dress**, *vestis* (gen. *vestis*).  
**drive**, (he) drives, *agit*; (they)  
*drive*, *agunt*.  
**dry**, *siccus*.  
**dust**, *pulvis* (gen. *pulveris*, masc.)

## E

**ear**, *auris* (gen. *auris*).  
**early**, *primus*.  
**easy**, *facilis*, *facile* (for the com-  
 parison, see p. 140).  
**educate** (to), *erudire*.  
**eighteen**, *undeviginti*.  
**elder**, *natus major* (i.e. greater by  
 birth).  
**eldest**, *natus maximus*.  
**end**, *finis* (gen. *finis*, masc.).  
**enemy**, *hostis* (gen. *hostis*); the  
 enemy, *hostes* (plural).  
**enormous**, *ingens* (gen. *ingentis*,  
 abl. *ingenti*).  
**evening** (in the), *vespere*.  
**every**, *omnis*.  
**everybody**, *omnes* (plural of *omnis*).  
**every day**, *cotidie*.  
**everything**, *omnia*.  
**exercise** (I), *exereo*; I take bodily  
 exercise, *corpus exereo*.  
**expect** (to), *exspectare*.  
**extraordinary**, *egregius*.  
**extreme**, *summus*.  
**eye**, *oculus* (2).

## F

**face**, *os* (gen. *oris*, neut.).  
**faithful**, *fidius*.

## F

**fall into**, (he) falls into, *incidit* ;  
(they) fall into, *incidentur*.

**famous**, *clarus*.

**far**, by far, *longe*; is far off, *longe  
abest*; are far off, *longe absunt*.

**farewell**, to one person, *valē*; to  
more than one, *valēte*.

**farther**, *longius*; farthest, (or)  
very far, *longissime*.

**fast**, *celer*, *celeris*, *cclere* (p. 115).

**father**, *pāter* (gen. sing. *patrīs*,  
gen. plur. *patrum*).

**fault**, to find fault with, *culpare*.

**favourable**, *secundus*.

**fear**, (he) fears, *tinet*; (they)  
fear, *timent*.

**few**, *pauci*.

**field**, *ayer* (gen. *agri*).

**fifteen**, *quindecim*.

**fifty**, *quinquaginta*.

**fight** (I), *mugno* (1).

**finish**, (he) finishes, *conficit*;  
(they) finish, *conficiunt*.

**fire**, *ignis* (gen. *ignis*, mase.)

**firm**, *fīrmus*.

**first**, *prīmus*.

**five**, *quinque*.

**flank**, *lātūs* (gen. *lātēris*).

**fleet**, *clāssis* (gen. *clāssis*).

**flight** (I put to), *fugo* (1).

**flock**, *grēx* (gen. *grēgis*, mase.) or  
*pecus* (gen. *pecūdīs*, fem.)

**flower**, *flos* (gen. *flōris*).

**following**, *postērus*.

**foot**, *pes* (gen. *pēlis*); "foot" is  
an adjective in "foot-forces,"  
*copiae pedestres*.

**for**, for (so many) years; put  
*annus* in acc., and omit "for."

**forces**, *cōpiae*. [mōris].

**forgetful**, *immēmor* (gen. *imme-*  
*form*), (he) forms a plan, *consilium*

*facit*; (they) form circles,  
*orbēs faciunt*.

**former**, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc* (gen. *hujus*).  
**fortify** (I), *mūnīo*.

## F

**fountain**, *sōns* (gen. *sōntis*, mase.)  
**free** (I set), *libērū* (1).

**frequent**, *creber*, *crebra*, *crebrum*.

**friend**, *amicus*.

**frighten**, (he) *Frightens*, *terret*;  
(they) *frighten*, *terrent*; is  
frightened, *territur*; are  
frightened, *territur*.

**from**, *a* or *ab* (with abl.)

**front**, in front of, *pro* (with  
ablative).

**full**, *plēnus*.

**furnish** (to), *ornare*.

## G

**garden**, *hortus* (2).

**gate**, *porta*.

**gather**, (he) gathers, *carpit*;  
(they) gather, *carpunt*.

**Gaul** (the country), *Gallia*.

**Gaul** (a), *Gallus*.

**gender**, *gēnus* (gen. *gēnēris*).

**German**, *Germānus*.

**girl**, *puella* (1).

**give**, (he) gives, *dat*; (they) give,  
*dant*; it is given, *datur*.

**glorious**, *mulcher*, *chrūt*, *chrūm*.

**go out**, (he) goes out, *exit*; (they)  
go out, *exiunt*.

**golden**, *aureus*.

**good**, *bonus*.

**good-bye** (to one person), *vale*;  
to more than one, *valēte*.

**grateful**, *gratus*.

**great**, *magnus*.

**Greece**, *Grecia*.

## H

**hair**, *crīnis* (gen. *crīnis*, mase.)

**hand**, *mānus* (4, fem.)

**happy**, *bēatus*.

**harass**, (he) harasses, *vexat*; (they)  
harass, *vexant*.

## H

**harbour**, *portus* (4).  
**harvest**, *messis* (gen. *messis*).  
**has**, *habet* : (they) have, *habent*.  
**head**, *cōpūt* (gen. *capitīs*).  
**healthy**, *sububer*, *bris*, *bre*.  
**hear**, (to), *audire*.  
**heart**, *animus* (2), or *cor* (gen. *cordis*, neut.)  
**heavy**, *grāvis*, grave; a heavy shower, *magnus imber*.  
**height**, in the height of summer, *summa aestate*.  
**help** (noun), *auxilium*.  
**help** (I), *adsum* (*ad-sum*) with dative.  
**her** (see his).  
**herd**, *pecus* (gen. *pecōris*, neut.)  
**here** (to be), *adesse*.  
**high**, *ullus*; highest praise, *summa laus*.  
**hill**, *collis* (gen. *collis*, masc.)  
**himself**, herself, themselves; when object, *sc.*, when in agreement, *ipse*.  
**his** is generally left out: *suum* can be used when the *his* means *his own* (i.e. when the *his* refers to the subject of the sentence).  
**hold the tongue**, *taceo*.  
**home**, (to) home, *dōnum*; at home, *dōmi*; from home, *dōmo*.  
**honesty**, *honestas* (gen. *honestatis*).  
**honourable**, *honestus*.  
**hope**, *spes* (5).  
**horn**, *cornu*.  
**horse**, *equis* (2).  
**horseman**, *eques* (gen. *equītis*).  
**hostage**, *obsēs* (gen. *obsēdis*).  
**hour**, *hora* (1).  
**house**, *domus* (4, fem., see p. 22).  
**how!** *quam*.  
**how many**, *quot* (how many men, *quot homines*).  
**how often?** *quoties*.  
**huge**, *ingens* (gen. *ingentis*).

## H

**human**, *humanus*.  
**husband**, *vir*.

## I

**I**, *cyo* (see p. 166).  
**ignorant**, I am ignorant of, *nescio*.  
**image**, *imāgo* (gen. *imaynīs*, fem.)  
**immediately**, *statim*.  
**in**, *in*, with the abl., but "in summer," "in winter," etc., are put in the ablative without *in*; "in Rome" is *Rōmāe* (see p. 164, note); in front of, *pro* (with ablative).  
**incite** (to), *incitare*.  
**Indus**, *Indus*.  
**industry**, *diligentia*.  
**infantry**, an infantry battle, *pugna pedestris*.  
**inform**, he informs Caesar, *Cāsārem certiōrem ficit*; they inform Caesar, *Cāsārem certiōrem faciunt* (i.e. they make Caesar more certain).  
**inhabit** (I), *inōlo* (3).  
**injustice**, *injuria* (1).  
**instead of**, *pro* (with ablative).  
**into**, *in* (with acc.).  
**is**, *est*; is—from, is—off, is—distant, *abest*.  
**Italy**, *Italia* (1).  
**itself**, *sc.*, *ipse*.

## J

**January**, *Januarius*.  
**join** (to), *conjungere*.  
**journey**, *iter* (gen. *itiñēris*, neut.) a journey on foot, *iter pedestris*.  
**judge** (a), *judex* (gen. *judicis*).  
**judge** (to), *judicare*.  
**judgment**, *judicium*.  
**Julia**, *Julia*.

## J

**June**, *Junius* (adj.)  
**just**, *justus*.  
**justice**, *justitia*.

## K

**keen**, *acer*, *aceris*, *acere* (see p. 114).  
**keep**, I keep, *teneo*.  
**keeper**, *custos* (gen. *custōnis*).  
**kill**, (he) kills, *interficit*; (they) kill, *interficunt*.  
**kind**, *génus* (gen. *generis*).  
**king**, *rex* (gen. *rēgis*).  
**kingdom**, *regnum*.  
**know**, I know, *scio*; I do not know, *nescio*.  
**known**, *nōtus*.

## L

**labour** (I), *laboro* (1).  
**lame**, *claudius*.  
**land**, *āger* (gen. *agri*); when "land" means "country," as on p. 134, *terra*.  
**large**, *magnus*; larger, *major*; largest, *maximus*.  
**last**, *prōximus*.  
**latter**, *ille*, *illa*, *illud* (gen. *illius*).  
**law**, *lex* (gen. *legis*).  
**lay waste**, (he) lays waste, *rastat*; (they) lay waste, *rastant*.  
**lazy**, *piger*, *pigra*, *pigrum*.  
**lead**, (he) leads, *dūcit*; (they) lead, *ducunt*; lead out, *ducit*, *educunt*; lead back, *reducit*, *reducunt*.  
**leader**, *dux* (gen. *dūcis*).  
**leaf**, *frons* (gen. *frondis*).  
**left**, *sinister*, *sinistra*, *sinistrum*; on the left hand, *sinistrā*.  
**legion**, *legio* (gen. *legiōnis*, fem.)  
**letter**, *epistāla* (1).  
**life**, *vita* (1).  
**light** (noun), *lux* (gen. *lucis*).  
**lightning**, *fulgur* (gen. *fulgūris*); flashes of lightning, *fulgura*.  
**like**, *similis*, *simile* (superl. *simili-*  
*mus*).

## L

**like** (I), *amī* (1).  
**likeness**, *imāgo* (gen. *imāgiōnis*).  
**line**, *ordō* (gen. *ordīnīs*). [sem.]  
**listen**, I listen, *audio*.  
**little**, *parvus*.  
**live** (I), *vivo* (3).  
**long** (adjective), *longus*; (adverb), for a long time, *dīu*; for longer, *dīutius*; for very long, *dīutissime*.  
**lord**, *domīnus* (2).  
**loud**, *magnus*.  
**love**, (he) loves, *amat*; (they) love, *amant*; is loved, *amatus*; are loved, *amantur*.

## M

**make**, (he) makes, *ficiit*; (they) make, *ficiunt*; (it) makes the harbour, *portum capiit*; they make the harbour, *portum capiunt*.  
**man**, *homo* (gen. *homīnis*); a (good) man, *vir* (gen. *vīri*); a young man, *jūvenis* (gen. *jūvenīs*); an old man, *sēnior* (gen. *sēniōis*).  
**manner**, *mōs* (gen. *mōris*).  
**many**, *multi*.  
**march**, (he) marches, *iter facit*; (they) march, *iter ficiunt*.  
**Marcus**, *Marcus*.  
**maritime**, *marītimus*.  
**marsh**, *palus* (gen. *palātīs*, fem.).  
**master**, of pupils, *māgister* (gen. *māgistrī*); of slaves, *domīnus* (2).  
**matter**, *rcs* (5).  
**me**, *me* (see p. 166).  
**merchant**, *mercator* (gen. *mer-*  
*cātōris*).  
**message**, *mūtūs* (2).  
**messenger**, *mūtūs* (2).  
**middle**, *mīdīus*; in the middle of summer, *medīa aestate* (i.e. in middle summer).

## M

midnight, (*at*), *mediu nocte*.  
 mile, *mille passus* (see p. 149).  
 milk, *lac* (*gen.* *lactis*).  
 mind, *animus* (2).  
 mindful, *mēmor* (*gen.* *memoris*).  
 mine, *merus*.  
 money, *pecūnia* (1).  
 month, *mensis* (*gen.* *mensis*, *masc.*)  
 morning (*in the*), *matne*.  
 mother, *māter* (*gen.* *sing.* *matris*,  
     *gen.* *plur.* *matrum*).  
 mound, *agḡor* (*gen.* *agḡoris*).  
 mountain, *mons* (*gen.* *montis*,  
     *nāse*).  
 much, *multus*.  
 much (*by*), *multo*.  
 multitude, *multitudo* (*gen.* *multi-*  
     *tudinis*, *fem.*)  
 murmur, *murmur* (*gen.* *murm̄ris*).  
 my, *meus* (*vocative*, *mi*).  
 N

name, *nōmen* (*gen.* *nom̄nis*).  
 nation, *gens* (*gen.* *gentis*).  
 neighbour, *alter*, *altra*, *alterum*  
     (*gen.* *alterius*).  
 neighbouring, *finītimus*.  
 neither—nor, *neque—neque*.  
 never, *nunquam*.  
 night, *nox* (*gen.* *sing.* *noctis*, *gen.*  
     *plur.* *noctium*).  
 nineteen, *undeviginti*.  
 no, *nullus*.  
 nobody, *no one*, *nēmo*.  
 not, *non*; not only—but also, *non*  
     *solum—sed etiam*.  
 nothing, *nihil* (*neut.* *indeclinable*).  
 now, *nunc*.  
 number, *numērus* (2).

## O

oak, *quercus* (4, *fem.*)  
 of, informs some one of, *de*.  
 off, *is—off*, *abest*.

## O

often, *sac̄e*.  
 old, of things, *antiquis*; of people,  
     two (*etc.*) years old, *duos* (*etc.*)  
     *annos natos*; older, *natus*  
     *major*; oldest, *natus maximus*;  
     an old friend, *vetus amicus*.  
 old age, *senectus* (*gen.* *senectatis*,  
     *fem.*)  
 old man, *sēnēcī* (*gen.* *sing.* *sēnis*,  
     *gen.* *plur.* *sēnum*).  
 on to, *in* (*with aee.*); on, *in* (*with*  
     *abl.*); is on the march, *iter*  
     *fucit*.  
 once, at once, *statim*.  
 one, *unus* (*gen.* *unūs*, (see p. 183);  
     one day, *aliquando*.  
 only, *solus* (see p. 183); adv.  
     *solum*.  
 oration, *oratio* (*gen.* *orationis*,  
     *fem.*)  
 orator, *orātor* (*gen.* *oratōris*).  
 order, (*he*) orders, *jubet*; (*they*)  
     order, *jubent*.  
 other, *alīns* (see p. 183).  
 ought (I), *debo*.  
 our, *nosler*, *nostrū*, *nostrum*.  
 out of doors, *foris*.  
 overcome, (*he*) overcomes, *superat*;  
     (*they*) overcome, *superant*.  
 owe (I), *debo*.  
 own, my own book, *meus ipsius*  
     *liber*.

## P

part, *paris* (*gen.* *partis*).  
 pay, (*he*) pays, *pendit*; (*they*) pay,  
     *pendunt*.  
 peace, *pax* (*gen.* *pacis*).  
 people (common), *vulgus* (2, *neut.*)  
 pick, (*he*) picks, *carpit*; (*they*)  
     pick, *carpunt*.  
 picture, *imāgo* (*gen.* *imaginis*,  
     *fem.*)  
 piercing, *acer*, *aeris*, *aere* (p. 114)  
 pirate, *praeclō* (*gen.* *praeclōnis*).  
 pitch, I pitch (a camp), *pono* (3).  
 place (I), *pono* (3).

## P

plan, *consilium*.  
 pleasant, *gratus*, *datus*.  
 please, (it) pleases, *delectat*; (they)  
     please, *delectant*.  
 poem, *poēma* (gen. *poematis*).  
 poet, *poēta* (1).  
 Pompeius, *Pompeius* (2).  
 poor, *pauper* (gen. *paupēris*).  
 poplar, *pōpulus* (2, fem.)  
 possess (1), *possideo*.  
 post (I), *collēgo* (1).  
 pour, (he) pours, *fundit*; (they)  
     pour, *fundunt*.  
 praise, *laus* (gen. *laudis*).  
 praise, (he) praises, *laudat*; (they)  
     praise, *laudent*.  
 prefer (1), *antepono* (3).  
 present (I am), *adsum*.  
 pretty, *pulcher*.  
 previous, *superior* (gen. *superiōris*).  
 prison, *carcer* (gen. *carceris*, masc.).  
 prosperity, *res secundūtē*.  
 prow, *prora* (1).  
 public, *publicus*.  
 punish (1), *punio* (4).  
 put (I), *pono* (3); I put on, *im-  
pono* (3); I put to flight, *fugo*  
     (1).

## Q

queen, *regina* (1).  
 quick, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere* (see p. 115).  
 quickly, *celeriter*.  
 quiet, *quies* (gen. *quietis*, fem.)  
 Quintus, *Quintus*.

## R

race, *gens* (gen. *gentis*).  
 rampart, *agger* (gen. *aggēris*).  
 rank, *ordo* (gen. *ordinis*, masc.).  
 rapid, *rapidus*.  
 read, (he) reads, *legit*; (they)  
     read, *legunt*.  
 receive, (he) receives, *accipit*;  
     (they) receive, *accipiunt*.

## R

red, *ruber*, *rubra*, *rubrum*.  
 reign (1), *regno* (1).  
 remain, (he) remains, *mānet*;  
     (they) remain, *mānent*.  
 remarkable, *cryptīns*.  
 remember (1), *memorātē*.  
 rest (the), *reſtē*.  
 rest, *quies* (gen. *quietis*, fem.)  
 return, (he) returns, *redit*; (they)  
     return, *reveniunt*.  
 reward, *præmīum*.  
 rich, *divīs* (gen. *divitīs*).  
 riches, *divitiae*.  
 right, *dexter*, *dextra*, *dextera*: on  
     the right hand, *dextrā*.  
 right, *ius* (gen. *jurīs*).  
 river, *flumen* (gen. *fluminis*).  
 robe, *vestis* (gen. *vestīs*).  
 rock, *rupes* (gen. *rupīs*).  
 Roman, *Romanus*.  
 room, *conclātū* (gen. *conclārīs*).  
 rose, *rūsa* (1).  
 rout, (he) routs, *faudit*; (they)  
     rout, *fauidunt*.  
 route, *iter* (gen. *itinēris*, neut.).  
 row, *ordo* (gen. *ordinis*, masc.).  
 royal, *rēgīus*.  
 rule (1), *regu* (3).  
 rush, *impētus* (4).

## S

sad, *tristis*, *triste*.  
 said, is said, *dicitur*; are said  
     *dicuntur*.  
 sail, I set sail, *narem solvo* (3, i.e.  
     I let loose the ship).  
 sailor, *nauītu* (1).  
 sake, for my sake, *meā causā*.  
 sally, *impētus* (4).  
 same, *idem* (see p. 176).  
 satisfied, *contentus*.  
 say, (he) says, *dicit*; (they) say,  
     *dicunt*; (he) is said, *dicitur*;  
     (they) are said, *dicuntur*.  
 scarcely, *vix*.

## S

**Scipio**, *Scipio* (gen. *Scipiōnis*).  
**sea**, *māre* (gen. *māris*).  
**see**, (he) sees, *vīdet*; (they) see, *vīdent*.  
**seek**, (he) seeks, *petit*; (they) seek, *petunt*.  
**seem**, (he) seems, *vīdetur*; (they) seem, *vīdentur*.  
**seen**, (he) is seen, *vīdetur*; (they) are seen, *vīdentur*.  
**seize** (I), *occūpo* (1).  
**send**, (he) sends, *mittit*; (they) send, *mittunt*.  
**set**, I set free, *libero* (1); I set sail, *nārem solvo* (3).  
**seventeen**, *septendēcim*.  
**severe**, *sevērus*.  
**sharp**, *acutus*.  
**ship**, *nāris* (gen. *nāris*); war-ship, *nāris longa*.  
**shore**, *lītus* (gen. *lītōris*).  
**short**, *brēvis*, *brēve*.  
**shout**, *clāmor* (gen. *clāmōris*).  
**shouting**, *clāmor* (gen. *clāmōris*).  
**shower**, *imber* (gen. *imbris*).  
**shrill**, *acutus*.  
**side**, *latus* (gen. *latēris*).  
**silent**, (I am), *taceo*.  
**sing**, (he) sings, *cānit*; (they) sing, *cānunt*.  
**sister**, *soror* (gen. *sorōris*).  
**six hundred**, *sescenti*, *ue*, *a*.  
**slaughter**, *clades* (gen. *clādīs*).  
**slave**, *servus* (2).  
**sleep**, I sleep, *dormio*.  
**small**, *parvus*.  
**soldier**, *mīles* (gen. *mīlitīs*).  
**some—others**, *alii—alii*.  
**some day**, *aliquando* (adv.).  
**sometimes**, *interdum* (adv.).  
**son**, *filius* (2).  
**song**, *carmen* (gen. *carmīnīs*).  
**soon**, *mox*.  
**speech**, *oratio* (gen. *oratiōnis*, fem.).  
**speed**, *celeritas* (gen. *celeritatis*).  
**spirit**, *anīmus* (2).

## S

**spirited**, *acer*, *aceris*, *aere* (see p. 114).  
**spring** (of water), *fons* (gen. *fōntīs*, masc.); spring (the season), *ver* (gen. *verīs*, neut.).  
**spur**, *calcar* (gen. *caleāris*).  
**state**, *respublica*.  
**station** (to), *collocare*.  
**stay**, (he) stays, *mānet*; (they) stay, *mānent*.  
**steep**, *arduus*.  
**steer**, (I), *rēgo* (2).  
**stone**, *lapis* (gen. *lāpīdis*, masc.).  
**stream**, *flumen* (gen. *flūmīnīs*).  
**strict**, *sevērus*.  
**sum of money**, *pecunia* (1).  
**summer**, *āestas* (gen. *āestātīs*); the summer sun, *sol āestivus*.  
**sun**, *sol* (gen. *solīs*, masc.).  
**surround**, (he) surrounds, *circumdat*; (they) surround, *circumduant*.  
**sweet**, *dulcis*, *dulce*.  
**swift**, *celer*, *celēris*, *celere*.  
**sword**, *ensis* (gen. *ensis*, masc.)

## T

**table**, *mensa* (1).  
**talk**, *sermo* (gen. *sermōnīs*).  
**take**, (he) takes, *capit*; (they) take, *capiunt*.  
**tax**, *rectigāl* (gen. *rectigālīs*).  
**teach**, I teach, *erudio*.  
**tell** (I), *dicō* (3).  
**tender**, *tenuer*, *tenēra*, *tenerum*.  
**territory**, *frīns* (plur. of *frīnīs*).  
**than**, *quam* (see also 137).  
**that**, *ille*, *illa*, *illud* (see p. 170); that of yours, *iste* (see p. 181).  
**their**, *suīus*.  
**thief**, *fur* (gen. *furīs*).  
**thing**, *res* (5).  
**thirteen**, *tredecim*.  
**thirty**, *triginta*.  
**this**, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc* (p. 170).  
**throw**, (he) throws, *jetūl*; (they) throw, *iacint*.

## T

**time**, *tempus* (gen. *temporis*).  
**tired**, *fessus*.  
**tiresome**, *molestus*.  
**to**, meaning motion to, *ad* with acc., but "to Rome" is *Romam*; "to home" is *domum*.  
**to-day**, *hodie*.  
**to-morrow**, *cras*.  
**tongue**, to hold ie tongue, *tenere*.  
**tooth**, *dens* (gen. *dentis*, mase.)  
**top**, the top of the oak, *summus*, *querens*.  
**town**, *urbs* (gen. *urbis*); town life, *vita urbana*.  
**traveller**, *viator* (gen. *viatoris*).  
**treaty**, *foedus* (gen. *foederalis*).  
**tree**, *arbor* (gen. *arboreis*, fem.)  
**tribe**, *gens* (gen. *gentis*).  
**troops**, *copiae*.  
**trouble**, *res aduersa*.  
**troublesome**, *molestus*.

## U

**uncertain**, *incertus*.  
**understand** (I), *intellego* (3).  
**undertaking**, *inceptum*.  
**unfavourable**, *adversus*.  
**unfortunate**, *miser*.  
**unhappy**, *miser*, *misera*, *miserrimus*.  
**unlike**, *dissimilis*, *dissimile*; sup. perl. *dissimillimus*.  
**unmindful**, *immor* (gen. *imm̄oris*).  
**urge**, (he) urges on, *incitat*; (they) urge on, *incitunt*.  
**useful**, *utilis*, *utile*.  
**utmost**, *summus*.

## V

**vain**, in vain, *frustra*.  
**valley**, *vallis* (gen. *vallis*).  
**varied**, *variatus*.  
**various**, *varius*.

## V

**verse**, *versus* (4).  
**very far**, *longissime*.  
**victory**, *victoria* (1).  
**virtue**, *virtus* (I, gen. *virtutis*, fem.)  
**voice**, *voca* (gen. *vocis*).

## W

**wait for** (I), *respecto* (1).  
**war**, *bellum*; war-ship, *navis longa*.  
**warn** (to), *monere*.  
**waste**, (he) lays waste, *rastat*; (they) lay waste, *rastant*.  
**wave**, *fluctus* (4).  
**we**, *nos*.  
**weight**, *pondus* (gen. *pondoris*).  
**weighty**, *gravis*, *grave*.  
**welcome**, *gratus*.  
**well** (I am), *valeo*.  
**what?** *quid?*  
**when?** *quando?*  
**where?** *ubi?*  
**which** (of two)? *uter?* (see p. 186).  
**white**, *albus*.  
**who**, *qui* (see p. 190); who? *quis?*  
**whole**, *totus* (see p. 183).  
**why**, *cur*.  
**wicked**, *impr̄ibus*.  
**wide**, *latus*.  
**wife**, *conjux* (gen. *conjūgis*).  
**wind**, *ventus* (2).  
**wine**, *vinum*.  
**wing**, *coru* (of an army).  
**winter**, *hiems* (gens. *hiemis*).  
**wisdom**, *scientia* (1).  
**wise**, *sapientia* (gen. *sapientis*).  
**wish**, (he) wishes, *cūpīt*; (they) wish, *cūpiunt*.  
**with** (along with), *cum* (with abl.).

witty, *facetus*.  
**woman**, *mulier* (gen. *mulieris*).  
**wood**, *silva* (1).  
**word**, *verbum*.

## W

**work**, *opus* (gen. *opēris*).  
**work** (l.), *labor* (l.).  
**world**, *orbis terrarum*.  
**worse**, *pīior*; worst, *pessimus*.  
**wound**, *vulnus* (gen. *vulnēris*).  
**wound**, (he) wounds, *vulnērat*;  
 (they) wound, *vulnerant*.  
**wretched**, *miser*, *misera*, *miserrum*.

## Y

**year**, *annus*.

## Y

**yesterday**, *heri*.  
**you**, *tu* (sing.), *vos* (plur., see p. 167).  
**young man**, *jūvēnis* (gen. sing.  
*juvenis*, gen. plur. *juvenum*).  
**younger**, *natus minor*; youngest,  
*natus minimus*.  
**your**, **yours**, of one, *tuis*; of more  
 than one, *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum*.  
**youth**, (the time of life), *jurrentus*  
 (gen. *juventūtis*, fem.)  
**youth** (a), *juvēnis* (gen. *juvēnis*).

THE END.



# WORKS ON LATIN GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

## GRAMMAR.

**Decursus Primus.** A First Latin Grammar with Exercises. By Professor T. G. TUCKER, Litt.D. Globe Svo. 3s.  
**First Latin Grammar.** By M. C. MACMILLAN, M.A. Fcap. Svo. 1s. 9d.  
**First Latin Book.** By W. H. S. JONES, M.A. Globe Svo. 1s. 9d.  
**School Latin Grammar.** By H. J. ROBY, M.A. Crown Svo. 6s.  
**Exercises on Latin Syntax and Idiom.** Arranged with reference to Roby's School Latin Grammar. By E. B. ENGLAND, Litt.D. Crown Svo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 2s. 6d. net.  
**Latin Grammar.** By Professor B. L. GILDERSLEEVE and GONZALEZ LODGE. Crown Svo. 7s. 6d.  
**A Grammar of the Latin Language,** from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A. Crown Svo. Part I. Sounds, Inflections, Word-Formation, Appendices. 10s. 6d.  
**Practical Hints on the Teaching of Latin.** By L. W. P. LEWIS, M.A. Crown Svo. 5s. net.

## TRANSLATION.

**Macmillan's Latin Reader.** A Latin Reader for the Lower Forms in Schools. By H. J. HARDY, M.A. Globe Svo. 3s.  
**A Latin Reading Book.** By Rev. E. D. STONE. Crown Svo. 1s. 9d.  
**Exercises in Unseen Translation in Latin.** By W. WELCH and C. G. DUFFIELD. Pott Svo. Sewed, 1s. 9d. Stiff Boards, 2s.  
**Latin Passages for Translation.** For the use of Higher Forms in Schools and of Students working for Pass Degrees. Selected by M. ALFORD. Globe Svo. 3s.  
**Versions of Latin Passages for Translation.** By M. ALFORD. Globe Svo. 6s. 6d. net.  
**Conspectus, or Latin at Sight.** A Method of Latin Sight Translation. By Rev. HERBLEY V. TAYLOR, M.A. Crown Svo. Vol. I. (Part I.), 1s. 9d. Vol. II. (Parts II. and III.), 1s. 9d. Complete 3s.

## PROSE COMPOSITION.

**Macmillan's Latin Course:**—

**FIRST PART.** By A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. Globe Svo. 3s. ed.

**SECOND PART.** By A. M. COOK, M.A., and W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. New and Enlarged Edition. Globe Svo. 4s.

**THIRD PART.** By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe Svo. 3s. KEY, for Teachers only. 5s. 6d. net.

**Macmillan's Shorter Latin Course:**—

**FIRST PART.** By A. M. COOK, M.A. Globe Svo. 2s. KEY, for Teachers only. 5s. 6d. net.

**SECOND PART.** By A. M. COOK, M.A., and W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe Svo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 5s. 6d. net.

The Third Part of the LATIN COURSE is also intended to form the concluding volume of the SHORTER LATIN COURSE.

**Latin Accidence and Exercises,** arranged for Beginners. By W. WELCH and C. G. DUFFIELD. Pott Svo. Sewed, 1s. 9d. Stiff Boards, 2s.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON.

# WORKS ON LATIN GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

## PROSE COMPOSITION—*continued.*

**Short Exercises in Latin Prose Composition and Examination Papers in Latin Grammar.** By Rev. H. BECKER, LL.D.

PART I. Pott Svo. 1s. 9d. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. 6d. net.

PART II. On the Syntax of Sentences, with an Appendix, including Exercises in Latin Idioms, etc. Pott Svo. 1s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 4s. net.

**Easy Exercises in Continuous Latin Prose.** By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe Svo. 2s. KEY, 5s. 6d. net.

**Sermo Latinus.** A Short Guide to Latin Prose Composition. By Prof. J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D. Fourth Edition. Crown Svo. Part I., 1s. 6d.; Part II., 2s. 6d.; Complete, 3s. 6d. KEY, 6s. net.

**Latin Composition based on Cæsar.** By GEORGE W. MITCHELL, M.A. Crown Svo. 2s. 6d.

**An Introduction to Latin Prose.** By GEORGE W. MITCHELL, M.A. Second Edition. Crown Svo. 7s. net.

**First Steps to Latin Prose Composition.** By Rev. G. RUST, M.A. Pott Svo. 1s. 9d.

**Latin Prose Exercises based upon Cæsar's Gallic War.** With a Classification of Cæsar's Chief Phrases and Grammatical Notes on Cæsar's Usages. By CLEMENT BRYANS, M.A. Globe Svo. 3s. KEY, for Teachers only. 5s. 6d. net.

**Hints towards Latin Prose Composition.** By A. W. POTTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Extra feap. Svo. 8s. 6d.

**Latin Phrase Book.** By C. MEISSNER. Translated by H. W. AUDEN, M.A. Globe Svo. 5s.

## VERSE COMPOSITION.

**Latin Elegiacs and Prosody Rhymes for Beginners.** By C. H. ST. L. RUSSELL, M.A. Globe Svo. 1s. 9d.

**Elegeia.** Passages for Latin Elegiac Verse. By C. H. ST. L. RUSSELL, M.A. With Hints and English-Latin Gradus. Globe Svo. 4s. KEY, 5s. 6d. net.

**A First Latin Verse Book.** By W. E. P. PANTIN, M.A. Globe Svo. 1s. 9d. KEY, for Teachers only. 5s. net.

**An Introduction to Latin Elegiac Verse Composition.** By J. H. LUPTON, Sur-Master of St. Paul's School. Globe Svo. 3s. KEY TO PART II. (XXV.-C.) 4s. 6d. net.

**An Introduction to Latin Lyric Verse Composition.** By the Same. Globe Svo. 3s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 5s. 6d. net.

**Exercises in Latin Verse of Various Kinds.** By Rev. G. PRESTON. Globe Svo. 2s. 6d. KEY, for Teachers only. 5s. net.

## DICTIONARIES, etc.

**Macmillan's Elementary Latin-English Dictionary.** By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A. Crown Svo. 4s.

**English-Latin Dictionary.** By Prof. C. D. YONGE. Crown Svo. 3s. 6d.

**The Student's Companion to Latin Authors.** By GEORGE MIDDLETON, M.A., and THOMAS R. MILLS, M.A. Crown Svo. 6s.

**MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON.**

